

# Elementary Language Practice

MICHAEL VINCE

- *Elementary grammar clearly explained*
- *Extensive practice of vocabulary in context*
- *Regular progress checks*



MACMILLAN  
HEINEMANN  
English Language Teaching



# Elementary Language Practice

MICHAEL VINCE



MACMILLAN  
HEINEMANN  
English Language Teaching

Macmillan Heinemann English Language Teaching  
Between Towns Road Oxford OX4 3PP  
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited  
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 0 435 24123 0  
0 435 24122 2 (with Key)

Text © Michael Vince 1999

Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited 1999

Heinemann is a registered trademark of Reed Educational and Professional Publishing Limited

First published 1999

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Designed by Newton Harris  
Illustrated by Philip Emms

The publishers would like to thank Sarah Borrows, Costas Gabrielatos, Margaret McCleod, Diane Stewart and Marion West for their help and comments.

Printed and bound in Spain by Mateu Cromo S.A., Madrid

2003 2002 2001 2000  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2



# Contents

## Grammar

Present simple of <i>be</i> : <i>I am, you are, he is, etc.</i>	6
Present simple: affirmative – frequency adverbs	8
Present simple: negative and questions	11
Present continuous: affirmative	13
Present continuous: negative and questions	15
Present continuous and present simple	18
Consolidation 1	21
Past simple: regular affirmative	23
Past simple: regular negative and questions	25
Past simple: irregular affirmative	28
Past simple: irregular negative and questions	30
Past simple of <i>be</i> : <i>I was, you were</i>	32
Past continuous: affirmative, negative and questions	34
Consolidation 2	36
Past continuous and past simple	38
Past habits: <i>used to</i>	40
Present perfect: affirmative	43
Present perfect: negative and questions	46
Present perfect and past simple	48
Present perfect and past simple: time expressions	50
Consolidation 3	52
<i>Going to</i> : future plans and predictions	54
<i>Will</i> : predictions – certainty and uncertainty	57
<i>Will</i> : functions – meetings, promises, decisions, refusing	60
<i>Will</i> and <i>going to</i> : problems	63
Present continuous: future use	65
Future time words – future contrasts	67
Consolidation 4	69
Conditional 1	71
Conditional 2	74
Conditionals 1 and 2	76
Short answers	79
<i>Wh</i> - questions – subject and object questions	81
Tag questions	83
Consolidation 5	85
Modals of ability/possibility: <i>can, cannot, able to</i>	87
Modals of obligation: <i>have to, must, should</i>	90
Modals of negative obligation: <i>mustn't, don't have to, shouldn't</i>	92
Modals – past: <i>could, couldn't, had to, didn't have to</i>	94
Modals of possibility/certainty: <i>may, might, could, can't, must</i>	96
Modals: problems and contrasts	98
Consolidation 6	100
Plural nouns	102
Countable/Uncountable nouns: <i>a, some, any</i>	104
Countable/Uncountable nouns: problems	106
Countable/Uncountable nouns: <i>much and many, how much, how many</i>	108

Elementary Language Practice

<b>Unit 47</b>	Countable/Uncountable nouns: <i>too much/many, enough, not enough</i>	110
<b>Unit 48</b>	Numbers: cardinal, ordinal, fractions and decimals	113
<b>Unit 49</b>	Consolidation 7	115
<b>Unit 50</b>	Functions 1: advice – agreeing/disagreeing – apologizing	117
<b>Unit 51</b>	Functions 2: descriptions – directions – excuses – greetings	119
<b>Unit 52</b>	Functions 3: asking for information – invitations – offers – permission	122
<b>Unit 53</b>	Functions 4: preferences – promises – reminders – requesting – suggesting – warning	125
<b>Unit 54</b>	Calendar: dates, years, days, months, seasons	128
<b>Unit 55</b>	Time: parts of the day, telling the time, 24-hour clock	130
<b>Unit 56</b>	Consolidation 8	132
<b>Unit 57</b>	Prepositions of place/position: <i>in, on, at, to, into</i>	134
<b>Unit 58</b>	Prepositions/adverbials of place/position: <i>outside/inside, next to, near, opposite, etc.</i>	137
<b>Unit 59</b>	Articles: <i>a/an, the</i>	140
<b>Unit 60</b>	Articles: 'zero article'	143
<b>Unit 61</b>	Pronouns 1: <i>I, etc, me, etc., mine, etc., this and that, one</i>	146
<b>Unit 62</b>	Pronouns 2: <i>someone, anybody, everything, none, etc.</i>	148
<b>Unit 63</b>	Consolidation 9	150
<b>Unit 64</b>	Reported speech – Past perfect	152
<b>Unit 65</b>	Passive 1	154
<b>Unit 66</b>	Passive 2: agent	156
<b>Unit 67</b>	Imperatives: <i>Sit down!, Don't talk!</i>	158
<b>Unit 68</b>	Gerunds: <i>Swimming is great!</i>	160
<b>Unit 69</b>	Contractions: <i>it's, they're, I'm, I've, he's, I'd, won't, don't</i>	162
<b>Unit 70</b>	Consolidation 10	164
<b>Unit 71</b>	Possession 1: <i>my, mine, whose, have got</i>	166
<b>Unit 72</b>	Possession 2: apostrophe, <i>of</i>	169
<b>Unit 73</b>	Adjectives, nationalities: <i>too cold, not hot enough, the English</i>	171
<b>Unit 74</b>	Order of adjectives: <i>long blonde hair</i> – problem adjectives	173
<b>Unit 75</b>	Making comparisons 1: comparative adjectives; <i>Lisa is older than Clare</i>	175
<b>Unit 76</b>	Making comparisons 2: superlative adjectives; <i>the fastest runner in the world</i>	178
<b>Unit 77</b>	Consolidation 11	180
<b>Unit 78</b>	Adverbs: formation, position, irregular	182
<b>Unit 79</b>	Subjects: <i>it</i> and <i>there</i>	184
<b>Unit 80</b>	Problem verbs: <i>have, have got, get</i>	186
<b>Unit 81</b>	Problem verbs: <i>make</i> and <i>do, go/come swimming</i> – phrasal verbs	189
<b>Unit 82</b>	Verbs with prepositions, gerund or infinitive	191
<b>Unit 83</b>	<i>Be</i> with adjectives and prepositions	193
<b>Unit 84</b>	Consolidation 12	195
<b>Unit 85</b>	Punctuation	197
<b>Unit 86</b>	Spelling 1: rules – problems	200
<b>Unit 87</b>	Spelling 2: same pronunciation, different spelling	202
<b>Unit 88</b>	Spelling 3: British and American spelling	204
<b>Unit 89</b>	Word formation and collocation: prefixes and suffixes – phrasal verbs – compound words	206
<b>Unit 90</b>	Consolidation 13	209

**Vocabulary**

<b>1</b>	Personal details	211
<b>2</b>	Family matters	212
<b>3</b>	Free time	213
<b>4</b>	Rooms	215
<b>5</b>	Places	217
<b>6</b>	Jobs	218
<b>7</b>	Inside the house	219
<b>8</b>	Food and drink	220
<b>9</b>	Animals	222
<b>10</b>	Clothes	223
<b>11</b>	Weather	225
<b>12</b>	The body	226
<b>13</b>	Staying healthy	227
<b>14</b>	The world around us	228
<b>15</b>	Transport	229
<b>16</b>	Useful things	230
<b>17</b>	Other countries	231
<b>18</b>	In the classroom	232
<b>19</b>	Going out	233
<b>20</b>	Shopping around	234
	<b>Formation rules</b>	236
	<b>Irregular verbs</b>	237
	<b>Grammar index</b>	239

# Unit 1

*I am, you are, he is*

Present simple of be

## Statements

<i>I am</i>	<i>he is</i>	<i>we are</i>
<i>I'm</i>	<i>he's</i>	<i>we're</i>
<i>you are</i>	<i>she is</i>	<i>they are</i>
<i>you're</i>	<i>she's</i>	<i>they're</i>
	<i>it is</i>	
	<i>it's</i>	

## Negatives

<i>I am not</i>	<i>he is not</i>	<i>we are not</i>
<i>I'm not</i>	<i>he isn't</i>	<i>we aren't</i>
<i>you are not</i>	<i>she is not</i>	<i>they are not</i>
<i>you aren't</i>	<i>she isn't</i>	<i>they aren't</i>
	<i>it is not</i>	
	<i>it isn't</i>	

## Questions

<i>Am I...?</i>	<i>Is he...?</i>	<i>Is it...?</i>	<i>Are we...?</i>
<i>Are you...?</i>	<i>Is she...?</i>		<i>Are they...?</i>

## Examples

- with ages  
*Carlos is fifteen. Anna is fourteen.*
- with nationality words  
*I'm Spanish. She's Turkish.*
- with jobs  
*Jim is a teacher. Are you a student?*
- with an adjective  
*You're right. I'm happy. It's easy.*
- with *this/that*  
*This is my bike. Is that your seat?*
- With question words: *where, when, what, who, why, how old*  
*Where is Jim? When is the next lesson? What time is it?*  
*Who are you? Why are they here? How old are you?*
- See Unit 69 Contractions.

**1**  
Complete the questions and answers.

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| a) What's your name?        | My name ..... <del>is</del> ..... Carlos. |
| b) Where ..... from?        | I'm from Brazil.                          |
| c) Are you at school?       | Yes, ..... a student.                     |
| d) How old .....?           | I'm fifteen.                              |
| e) ..... English difficult? | No, it's easy.                            |

**2**  
Write about yourself.

My name .....  
 ..... from .....  
 ..... (a student)  
 ..... (fifteen)



**3**  
Put *is, are, isn't* or *aren't* in each space.

- This .....~~is~~..... my family.
- These ..... my parents.
- Lucy ..... my sister, she's my friend.
- We ..... in our garden, we aren't at the beach.
- My friends ..... in this photo.
- They ..... at the park.
- My dog, Bonzo, ..... in this photo.
- He ..... at the park too.

**4**  
Make negative sentences.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| a) It's hot today.       | ... <del>It isn't hot today.</del> ..... |
| b) I'm at home.          | .....                                    |
| c) My friends are here.  | .....                                    |
| d) You're a teacher.     | .....                                    |
| e) It's 3.30.            | .....                                    |
| f) We're at the cinema.  | .....                                    |
| g) This is difficult.    | .....                                    |
| h) We're in London.      | .....                                    |
| i) Katy is happy.        | .....                                    |
| j) This answer is wrong. | .....                                    |

**5**  
Make questions.

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a) I'm late.                     | ... <del>Am I late.</del> .....? |
| b) You're ill.                   | .....?                           |
| c) They're ready.                | .....?                           |
| d) We're right.                  | .....?                           |
| e) He's fifteen.                 | .....?                           |
| f) It's cold.                    | .....?                           |
| g) She's American.               | .....?                           |
| h) He's at the park.             | .....?                           |
| i) The school is in this street. | .....?                           |
| j) My books are in your bag.     | .....?                           |

# Unit 2

***I walk, he walks  
always, often, usually,  
sometimes, never***

Present simple: affirmative  
Frequency adverbs

We use the present simple to describe general facts, repeated actions and habits, facts that are always true.

- general facts  
*I like milk.*                      *They speak Turkish.*  
*Maria plays basketball.*      *We live in Australia.*
- repeated actions and habits  
*Harry often arrives late.*      *I usually get up at 7.30.*
- things that are always true  
*The sun rises in the east.*      *The earth goes round the sun.*

## Statements

*I walk to school every day. My brother usually walks with me.*

<i>I walk</i>	<i>we walk</i>
<i>you walk</i>	<i>they walk</i>
<i>BUT he walks</i>	<i>she walks</i> <i>it walks</i>

## Spelling

<i>go</i>	→	<i>goes</i>
<i>miss</i>	→	<i>misses</i>
<i>watch</i>	→	<i>watches</i>
<i>wash</i>	→	<i>washes</i>
<i>relax</i>	→	<i>relaxes</i>

***always,  
usually, often,  
sometimes,  
never***

<i>always</i>	100%	<i>Tim always wears jeans.</i>
<i>usually</i>	80%	<i>I usually go to bed at 9.30.</i>
<i>often</i>	60%	<i>Sue often goes to the cinema.</i>
<i>sometimes</i>	40%	<i>Sam sometimes walks to school.</i>
<i>never</i>	0%	<i>It never rains here in August.</i>

The frequency adverb goes between subject and verb.

*Monday always comes after Sunday.*

**1**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Juan and Carmen live/lives in Madrid.
- b) Harry watch/watches television every evening.
- c) I usually go/goes to school by bus.
- d) It never snow/snows in this city.
- e) Sam live/lives in that house.
- f) You never clean/cleans your teeth!
- g) Carol get/gets up early every day.
- h) All the buses leave/leaves from this bus-stop.

**2**

Complete each sentence. Use the verb and frequency adverb in brackets.

- a) Tina (miss, sometimes) ...*sometimes misses*... the bus to school.
- b) I (never, get up) ..... before 6.00.
- c) We (have, usually) ..... a holiday in August.
- d) Jim and Helen (often, go) ..... to the theatre.
- e) I (sing, often) ..... in the shower.
- f) Pat (play, sometimes) ..... football on Sunday.
- g) You (finish, never) ..... your homework!
- h) Our teacher (wear, always) ..... a tie.

**3**

Use the pictures to complete each sentence. Use a verb from the box.

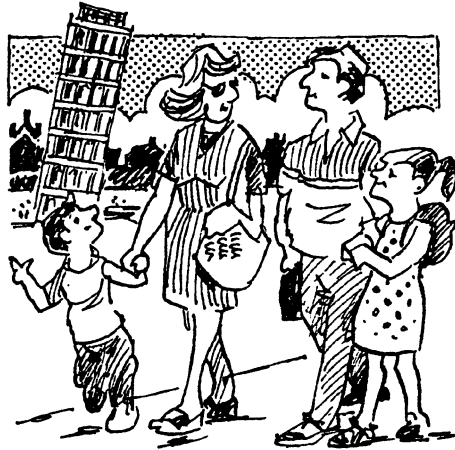
arrive like live own play rain start teach



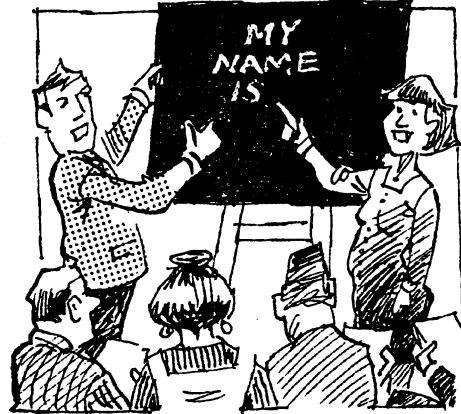
a) David ...*likes*..... chocolate.



b) It ..... here in November.



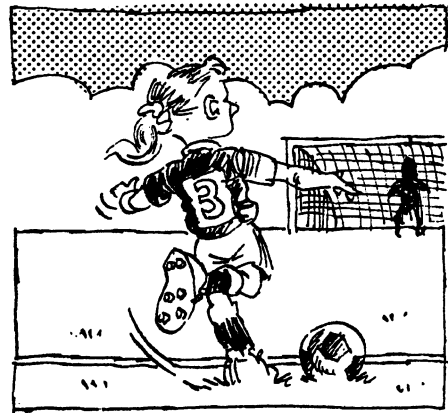
c) Liz ..... with her family in Italy.



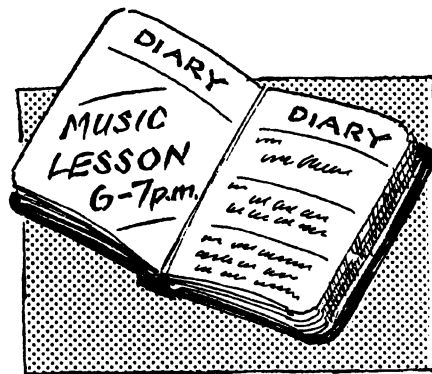
f) Kate and Jim ..... English in Spain.



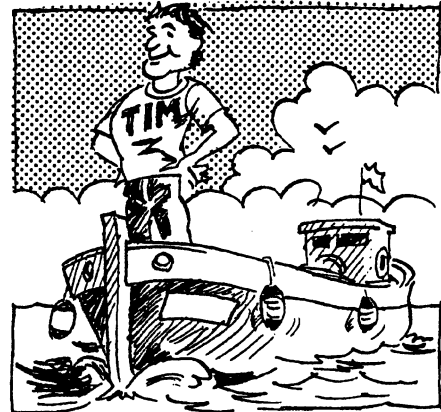
d) George often ..... late.



g) Jane ..... football every day after school.



e) The lesson ..... at 6.00.



h) I ..... this boat.



# Unit 3

***I don't walk, we don't walk***      Present simple: negative and  
***Do you walk? Does he walk?***      questions

## Negatives

*I don't like ice-cream. She doesn't eat chocolate.*

<i>I do not walk.</i>	<i>He does not walk.</i>	<i>We do not walk.</i>
<i>I don't walk.</i>	<i>He doesn't walk.</i>	<i>We don't walk.</i>
<i>You do not walk.</i>	<i>She does not walk</i>	<i>They do not walk.</i>
<i>You don't walk.</i>	<i>She doesn't walk.</i>	<i>They don't walk.</i>
	<i>It does not walk.</i>	
	<i>It doesn't walk.</i>	

## Examples

*I don't drink coffee.*      *They don't speak Italian.*  
*Tom doesn't play tennis.*      *We don't live in France.*

## Questions

*Do you walk to school or do you take the bus?*  
*I usually walk.*

<i>Do I walk?</i>	<i>Does he walk?</i>	<i>Do we walk?</i>
<i>Do you walk?</i>	<i>Does she walk?</i>	<i>Do they walk?</i>
	<i>Does it walk?</i>	

## Examples

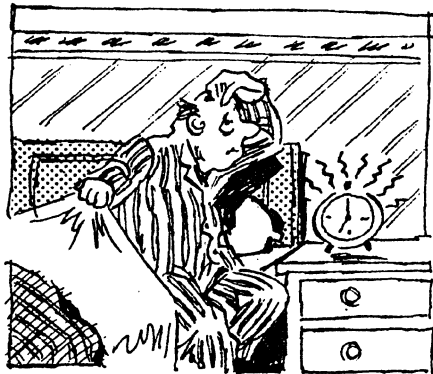
*Do you like ice-cream?*      *Do they speak Italian?*  
*Does Ana play basketball?*      *Do you live in Australia?*  
*Does Harry often arrive late?*      *Do you usually get up at 7.30?*

## Careful!

*I walk, you walk, we walk BUT he walks, she walks, it walks*  
*He walks. Does he walk?*

**1**

Make questions and negative sentences.



Jack



Alice and Mike

- a) Jack – get up at 7.00 ...Does Jack get up at 7.00.....?
- b) Alice and Mike – walk to work .....?
- c) Jack – leave home at 8.00 .....?
- d) Alice and Mike – relax in the evening .....?
- e) Jack – watch TV .....?
- f) Alice and Mike – not/like basketball ...Alice and Mike don't like basketball...
- g) Jack – not/wear school uniform .....
- h) Alice and Mike – not/use computers .....
- i) Jack – not/do his homework .....
- j) Alice and Mike – not/drink coffee .....

**2**

Put the words in brackets into the correct order.

- a) Our (smoke, not, teachers, do) ..... *teachers do not smoke* ..... at school.
- b) Where (Helen, live, does) .....?
- c) (do, not, go, we) ..... to the cinema on Friday.
- d) Pedro and Sara (not, do, eat) ..... fish.
- e) (David, does, ride) ..... a bike?
- f) (play, do, you) ..... football after school?
- g) Kate (like, does, not) ..... oranges.
- h) What (you, do, want) .....?
- i) I (lunch, usually, have) ..... at 1.30.
- j) (not, Ali, does, go) ..... to school on Friday.

**3**

Complete each sentence. Use the verb in brackets.

- a) Mary (like, not) ... *does not like* ..... baseball.
- b) (wash, Peter) ..... his face every morning?
- c) (watch, you) ..... television every day?
- d) I (eat, not, often) ..... fruit.
- e) (have, we) ..... homework today?
- f) My father (work, not, usually) ..... in the evening.
- g) (come, Bob) ..... to school on his bike?
- h) Alex's brothers (not, play) ..... football on Sunday.
- i) (go, Jane, often) ..... to the mountains?
- j) My friends (live, not) ..... near my house.

# Unit 4

***I'm waiting, she's waiting, they're waiting*** Present continuous: affirmative

We use the present continuous to talk about actions happening at the moment.

## Statements

*I am sitting in my car. She's watching television.*

<i>I am waiting.</i>	<i>He is waiting.</i>	<i>We are waiting.</i>
<i>I'm waiting.</i>	<i>He's waiting.</i>	<i>We're waiting.</i>
<i>You are waiting.</i>	<i>She is waiting.</i>	<i>They are waiting.</i>
<i>You're waiting.</i>	<i>She's waiting.</i>	<i>They're waiting.</i>
	<i>It is waiting.</i>	
	<i>It's waiting.</i>	

## Examples

*I'm studying English.  
My brother's talking on the telephone now.  
We're swimming in the sea.  
Sue's reading a book at the moment.*

## Spelling

Verbs ending in one consonant, add *-ing*.

*wait → waiting*

Verbs ending in *e*, drop *e* and add *-ing*.

*make → making    decide → deciding    write → writing*

Verbs ending with one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

*sit → sitting    swim → swimming    cut → cutting*

Verbs ending *ie* change *ie* to *y*.

*lie → lying    tie → tying    die → dying*

Verbs ending in a vowel and *y* add *-ing*.

*stay → staying    play → playing    say → saying*

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

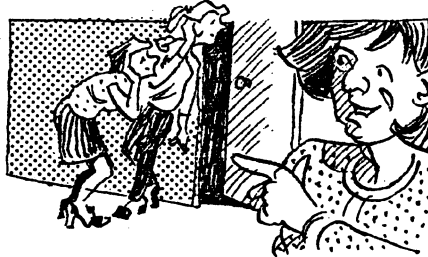
What is happening in each picture? Write a sentence for each one.



a) I/eat ...../I'm.eating.....



d) You/move .....



b) They/listen .....



e) It/rain .....



c) She/come .....



f) We/sing .....

**2**

Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.

- a) Sam (drink) ...is drinking..... some milk.
- b) You (stand) ..... on my foot!
- c) Mike (stay) ..... at this hotel.
- d) You (sit) ..... in my place!
- e) We (have) ..... a good time.
- f) I can't talk now. I (wash) ..... my hair.
- g) Tim and Sue (write) ..... letters.
- h) It (snow) ..... now.

**3**

Choose the correct spelling for the word or words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Jean is swimming/swiming in the pool at the moment.
- b) The girls are are putting/puting on their coats.
- c) Hurry up! We're/Wer'e waiting for you.
- d) Look outside! Its/It's snowing!
- e) Paula is studing/studying economics in Germany.
- f) Jim is here. H'es/He's watching television.
- g) I can't come now. I'm writting/writing a letter.
- h) Gary is haveing/having a good time.

# Unit 5

***I'm not waiting, he isn't waiting  
Is she waiting? Are they waiting?***

Present continuous: negative  
and questions

## Negatives

*I'm not walking to school today.*

<i>I am not waiting. I'm not waiting.</i>	<i>He is not waiting. He isn't waiting. (He's not...)</i>	<i>We are not waiting. We aren't waiting. (We're not...)</i>
<i>You are not waiting. You aren't waiting. (You're not....)</i>	<i>She is not waiting. She isn't waiting. (She's not...)</i>	<i>They are not waiting. They aren't waiting. (They're not...)</i>
	<i>It isn't waiting. It is not waiting. (It's not waiting.)</i>	

## Examples

*I'm not drinking milk, I'm drinking cola.  
They aren't playing football. They're playing rugby.*

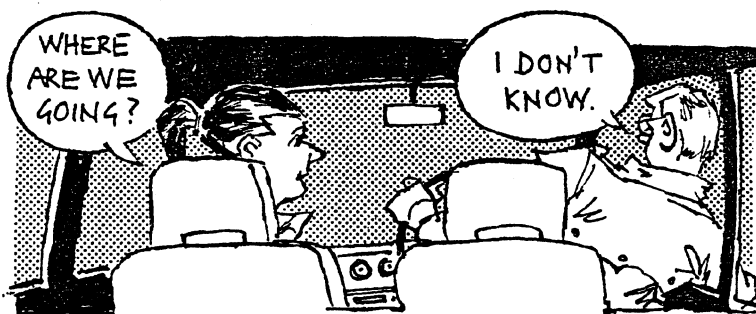
## Questions

*Are you walking to school today?*

<i>Am I waiting?</i>	<i>Is he waiting?</i>	<i>Are we waiting?</i>
<i>Are you waiting?</i>	<i>Is she waiting?</i>	<i>Are they waiting?</i>
	<i>Is it waiting?</i>	

## Examples

*What are you doing? Are you reading?  
I'm fixing my bike. No, I'm not reading.*



*Elementary Language Practice*

**1**

Look at each picture and make a question.



a) You/work?  
...*Are you working*.....?



d) You/have a good time?  
.....?



b) They/stay here?  
.....?



e) I/disturb/you?  
.....?



c) Helen/do her homework?  
.....?



f) He/sleep?  
.....?

**2**

Make questions.

- a) I'm making a lot of noise.      *...Am I making a lot of noise.....?*
- b) Clare is reading.      .....
- c) You are watching the news.      .....
- d) It is snowing.      .....
- e) We are waiting in the right place.      .....
- f) You are sitting here.      .....
- g) David is enjoying the film.      .....
- h) The bus is stopping.      .....
- i) Bill and Ben are studying.      .....
- j) Those girls are speaking French.      .....

**3**

Make negative sentences.

- a) You're listening to me.      *...You aren't listening to me.....*
- b) Tim is studying.      .....
- c) We're talking.      .....
- d) You are writing.      .....
- e) Katherine is lying.      .....
- f) They are waiting for us.      .....
- g) Anna's having a good time.      .....
- h) I'm reading at the moment.      .....
- i) It's raining.      .....
- j) I'm not eating pizza.      .....

**4**

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) I playing tennis with my best friend.      *...I'm playing tennis with my best friend.....*
- b) You're coming to the cinema tonight?      .....
- c) John and Mandy don't going to the beach.      .....
- d) Is Emma and Katy flying to America?      .....
- e) My sister is walk on the beach now.      .....
- f) We not studying French at school this year.      .....
- g) What's that noise? The dog is outside?      .....
- h) I aren't watching the TV. Turn it off.      .....
- i) Fred are eating a sandwich for his lunch.      .....
- j) Are waiting they for a bus?      .....

# Unit 6

*I'm reading, I read* Present continuous and present simple

## Present continuous

To talk about things happening at the moment, use the present continuous.

*Jim is watching television at the moment.*

## Present simple

To talk about habits and routines use the present simple.

- Things we do often, every day, every week, etc.
- Things that always happen.

*I arrive at school at 8.30.*

*The first lesson starts at 8.45.*

*The lesson finishes at 9.30.*



*Jim is watching TV.*

## Careful!

*Joe lives in New York. New York is his home. He lives there all the time.*

*We are living near the station at the moment. We want to move to another house soon.*

Verbs usually used with the present simple:

cost	<i>This bike costs £200.</i>
like	<i>Anna likes rap music.</i>
know	<i>Do you know the answer?</i>
understand	<i>I don't understand this.</i>
believe	<i>Do you believe me?</i>

Some verbs have one meaning in the simple form, but a different meaning in the continuous form.

*Do you have a bike?* = Do you own a bike? (in general)

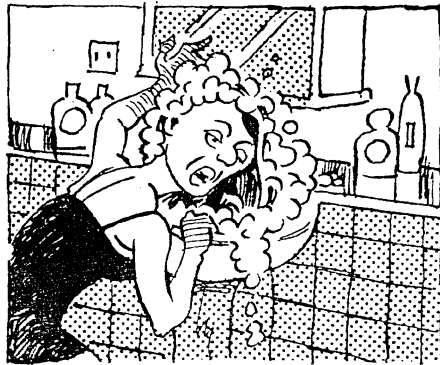
*I'm having a great time!* = It's a great party! (at the moment)

*I think this film is great!* = I like this film a lot. (in general)

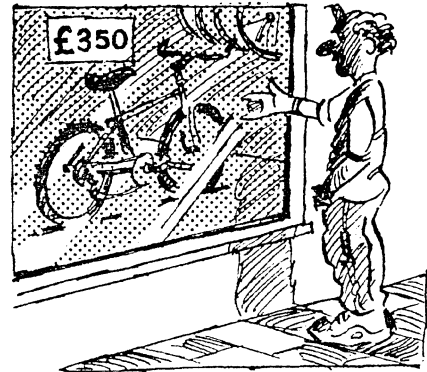
*Quiet! I'm thinking.* = I'm doing a difficult exercise. (at the moment)



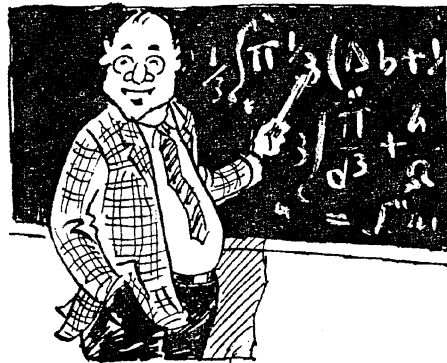
**1**  
Tick the best  
sentence or  
question.



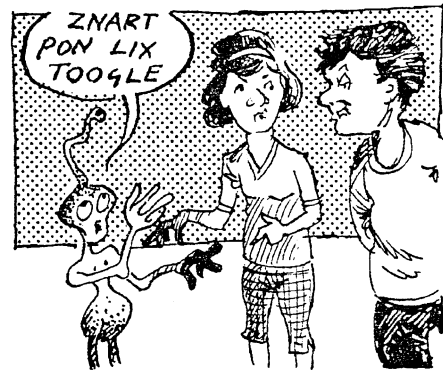
- a) 1) I wash my hair.  
2) I'm washing my hair. ✓



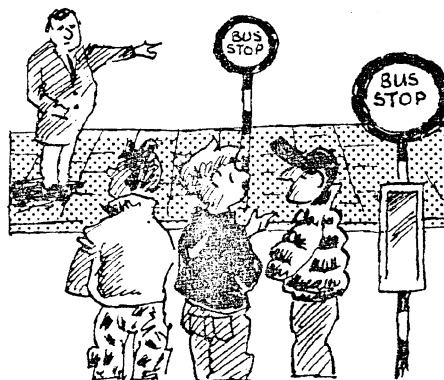
- d) 1) That bike costs £350.  
2) That bike is costing £350.



- b) 1) Do you know the answer?  
2) Are you knowing the answer?



- e) 1) Do you understand?  
2) Are you understanding?



- c) 1) Do you wait for the school bus?  
You're in the wrong place!  
2) Are you waiting for the school  
bus?  
You're in the wrong place!

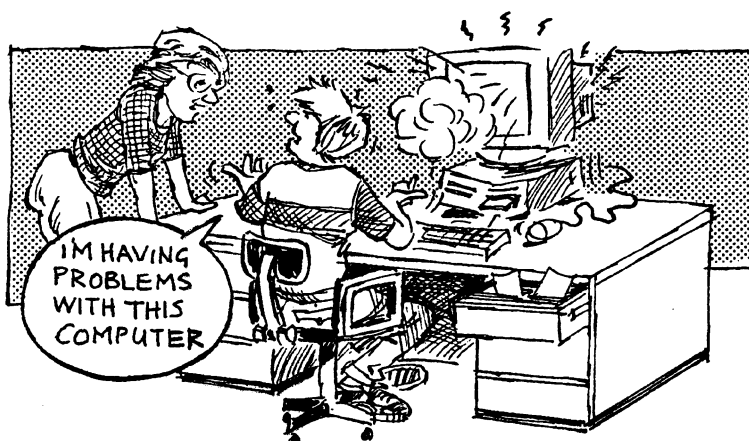


- f) 1) I do my homework.  
2) I'm doing my homework.

**2**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) 'Someone is waiting/waits for you outside.' 'Who is it?'
- b) 'What are you thinking/do you think of this book?' 'I think it's fantastic!'
- c) Are you believing/Do you believe in ghosts?
- d) Kate is busy. She is studying/studies for a test.
- e) We're having/We have a great time at the moment!
- f) Tina is usually getting up/usually gets up at 7.00.
- g) There is a lot of noise in the street. What is happening/happens?
- h) Hurry up! The bus is coming/comes.
- i) Paul isn't liking/doesn't like pizza.
- j) What's your job exactly? What are you doing/do you do?



**3**

Put the verb in brackets into the present simple or present continuous.

- a) Richard (always, get up) ...*always gets up*..... before 7.00.
- b) Hurry up! The bus (wait) ..... for us!
- c) Where (we, go) .....? This is the wrong road!
- d) My friends (not believe) ..... my story.
- e) Mary can't talk to you at the moment. She (have) ..... a hot bath.
- f) Please be quiet! I (read) ..... a very interesting book.
- g) (like, Susan) ..... horror films?
- h) Ali (usually, sit) ..... at the front of the class.
- i) This bike (cost) ..... a lot of money.
- j) I'm sorry, but I can't hear you. You (talk) ..... very quietly.



Elementary Language Practice

**4**

Rewrite each sentence. Use the words in brackets.

- a) Kate goes to school by bus. (usually) *...Kate usually goes to school by bus.....*
- b) I'm working hard. (not) .....
- c) Sara likes sport. (not) .....
- d) I get up at 6.30. (always) .....
- e) We speak German. (not) .....
- f) Pierre goes to the beach. (often) .....
- g) George drinks beer. (never) .....
- h) We're having a good time. (not) .....

**5**

Tick the correct sentence.

- a) I don't understand this sentence. ✓  
I'm not understanding this sentence.
- b) Do you eat always a sandwich for lunch?  
Do you always eat a sandwich for lunch?
- c) Laura is doing her homework at the moment.  
Laura does her homework at the moment.
- d) Jane is reading every evening.  
Jane reads every evening.
- e) Excuse me, how much do these shoes cost?  
Excuse me, how much are these shoes costing?
- f) Helen is never eating meat.  
Helen never eats meat.

**6**

Present simple or present continuous? Change the verb if it is wrong.

- a) Are you owning this motorbike?  
*...Do you own a motorbike?.....*
- b) I'm staying in a hotel near the sea.  
.....
- c) I'd like to buy this coat. How much is it costing?  
.....
- d) What's the matter? The bus is stopping.  
.....
- e) I'm usually getting up at 6.00.  
.....
- f) This book is difficult. I'm not understanding it.  
.....
- g) I watch a lot of TV every night.  
.....
- h) Excuse me. Are you knowing the way to the museum?  
.....

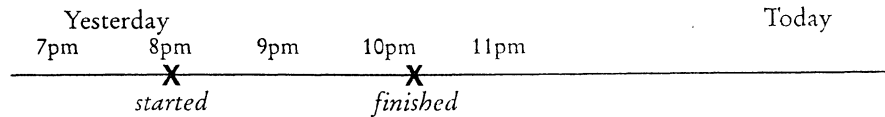
Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the difference between the present simple and present continuous. When do we use the present simple? When do we use the present continuous? Do you have the same difference in your language?
- 2 How do we make negatives and questions in the present simple?

# Unit 8

**I started, he started** Past simple: regular affirmative

We use the past simple to describe finished events in the past.



*Yesterday I watched a great film on TV. It started at 8pm and finished at 10.15pm.*

Regular verbs

watch + ed	start + ed
------------	------------

## Statements

*John played football last week.  
My grandparents moved to Scotland last year.*

<i>I started</i>	<i>he started</i>	<i>we started</i>
<i>you started</i>	<i>she started</i>	<i>they started</i>
	<i>it started</i>	

## Examples

*The bus arrived at 9.30.  
In 1998 I decided to move to Australia.  
Kate stayed in Turkey last summer.  
Yesterday I walked to school.*

## Spelling

*fit → fitted                      stop → stopped  
cry → cried                      try → tried*

## Careful!

Two syllable verbs with the stress on the first syllable do NOT double the final consonant.

*admit → admitted  
answer → answered*

## Other regular verbs

*answer    listen    start  
arrive    live    stop  
decide    marry    turn  
like    open    watch*

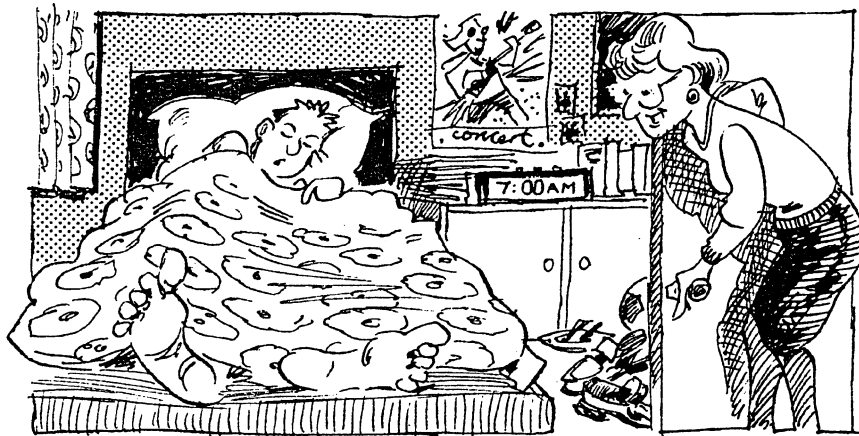
## Task

Make your own list of regular verbs.

**1**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

My Day Yesterday



- a) My mother (call) ...*called*.... me at 7.00.
- b) I (wash) ..... and (dress) ..... very quickly.
- c) I (walk) ..... to school.
- d) I (study) ..... all day at school.
- e) After school I (watch) ..... television.
- f) Then I (play) ..... basketball with my friends.
- g) At 8.30 we (finish) ..... the game.
- h) Before bedtime I (telephone) ..... my friend.

**2**

Complete the paragraph in the past simple. Use a verb from the box.

arrive continue finish listen play start talk work

My First Day at School

I remember my first day at school in 1995! I (a) ...*arrived*..... at 8.30 and (b) ..... lessons at 9.00. We (c) ..... from 9.00 to 12.00. The teachers (d) ..... to us a lot! Then we (e) ..... football for an hour. In the afternoon we (f) ..... the lessons and (g) ..... to the teacher very carefully. Then at 3.30 the lessons (h) ..... . It was a long and tiring day!

**3**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- a) Tom (look) .....*looked*..... out of the window.
- b) We (arrive) ..... at 6.30.
- c) Laura (watch) ..... television all afternoon.
- d) Kate (close) ..... all the windows and doors.
- e) Sam (live) ..... in a cottage in the country last year.
- f) The bus (stop) ..... at the end of the street.
- g) I (visit) ..... an old castle last week.
- h) Sue (wait) ..... for her friends for more than an hour.
- i) Ruth (decide) ..... to come to my party.
- j) Nick (answer) ..... all the questions.

# Unit 9

**he didn't start, you didn't start**  
**Did he start? Did you start?**

Past simple: regular negative  
and questions

## Negatives

*I didn't start learning English last year. I started this year.*

<i>I did not start</i>	<i>he did not start</i>	<i>we did not start</i>
<i>I didn't start</i>	<i>he didn't start</i>	<i>we didn't start</i>
<i>you did not start</i>	<i>she did not start</i>	<i>they did not start</i>
<i>you didn't start</i>	<i>she didn't start</i>	<i>they didn't start</i>
	<i>it did not start</i>	
	<i>it didn't start</i>	

## Questions

*Did you start learning English last year?*

<i>Did I start?</i>	<i>Did he start?</i>	<i>Did we start?</i>
<i>Did you start?</i>	<i>Did she start?</i>	<i>Did they start?</i>
	<i>Did it start?</i>	

## Wh- questions

*When did you start learning English?*  
*When did you finish your homework?*

## Examples

*Did they arrive yesterday? No, they didn't arrive yesterday.*  
*They arrived on Monday.*

*Did you finish your homework? No, I didn't finish my homework.*  
*It was very difficult.*

*When did you start school? I started school in 1993.*

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Make questions about the person named in brackets.

- a) Tim arrived at 2.00. (David)  
.....*Did David arrive at 2.00.*.....?
- b) Sam phoned home. (Mary)  
.....?
- c) Helen wanted to make a phone call. (Sue)  
.....?
- d) Paul visited the doctor. (Mike)  
.....?
- e) Bill missed the bus. (Ann)  
.....?
- f) George walked to school. (Gary)  
.....?
- g) Jim opened the window. (Tina)  
.....?
- h) Emma helped the teacher. (Chris)  
.....?
- i) Alice washed her hair. (Jane)  
.....?
- j) Robert enjoyed the film. (Steve)  
.....?

**2**

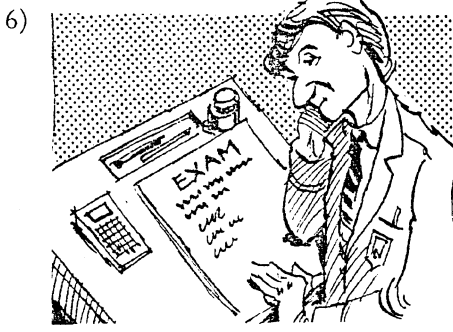
Make negative sentences.

- a) Our bus arrived on time.  
.....*Our bus didn't arrive on time.*.....
- b) Sue phoned last night.  
.....
- c) Maria finished work early yesterday.  
.....
- d) The train stopped at Harry's station.  
.....
- e) I wanted to go to bed early.  
.....
- f) Carlos answered my letter.  
.....
- g) John invited lots of people to his party.  
.....
- h) The shops opened on Sunday.  
.....
- i) Peter liked his new shoes.  
.....
- j) The film started at 7.30.  
.....



**3**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) Did you walk home in the rain? .....3.
- b) Why did you invite them? .....
- c) Paul didn't answer the questions. ....
- d) Did you remember to do your homework? ....
- e) Lisa didn't want to watch television. ....
- f) Jim didn't finish the race. ....

**4**

What *didn't* you do yesterday?  
Make negative sentences.

- a) jump *...I didn't jump on a spider yesterday.....*
- b) clean .....
- c) cook .....
- d) play .....
- e) watch .....
- f) talk .....

# Unit 10

**you went, she ate** Past simple: irregular affirmative

Irregular verbs do not have *-ed* endings for the past simple. Each verb has its own form and we have to learn these forms.

go → *went*    eat → *ate*

## Statements

*Last week we went to the cinema.  
Pedro ate 10 cakes yesterday.*

Go	Eat
<i>I went</i>	<i>I ate</i>
<i>you went</i>	<i>you ate</i>
<i>he went</i>	<i>he ate</i>
<i>she went</i>	<i>she ate</i>
<i>it went</i>	<i>it ate</i>
<i>we went</i>	<i>we ate</i>
<i>they went</i>	<i>they ate</i>



## Examples

*Yesterday I drank Japanese beer.  
Harry always came late.  
We made dinner last night.*

## Task

Complete the list. Use the words in the box.

sent got did knew began flew brought took went had  
came told gave stood met made found wore drank ran

<u>Verb</u>	<u>Past simple</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Past simple</u>
begin	... <i>began</i> .....	have	.....
bring	.....	know	.....
come	.....	make	.....
do	.....	meet	.....
drink	.....	run	.....
find	.....	send	.....
fly	.....	stand	.....
get	.....	take	.....
give	.....	tell	.....
go	.....	wear	... <i>wore</i> .....

Now check your answers. Look at the list of irregular verbs on page 237.

**1**

Rewrite each sentence in the past tense. Use a verb from the box.

began brought came gave went  
made met ran sent took

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a) Harry runs to the shops.                | Yesterday ... <i>Harry ran to the shops</i> .... |
| b) Juan sends lots of letters.             | Yesterday .....                                  |
| c) Helen makes sandwiches for lunch.       | Yesterday .....                                  |
| d) Jean begins work at 6 o'clock.          | Yesterday .....                                  |
| e) Katia goes swimming.                    | Yesterday .....                                  |
| f) David brings his pet mouse to school.   | Yesterday .....                                  |
| g) Paula gives sweets to her friends.      | Yesterday .....                                  |
| h) Sam takes his dog for a walk.           | Yesterday .....                                  |
| i) Dimitri meets his friends after school. | Yesterday .....                                  |
| j) Ellen comes here by bus.                | Yesterday .....                                  |

**2**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- a) The last lesson (begin) ...*began*..... at 2.30.  
 b) Joe (feel) ..... ill after lunch.  
 c) Suddenly a bird (fly ) ..... in the window!  
 d) I think you (do) ..... the wrong thing.  
 e) Jane (get) ..... ready very quickly.  
 f) We (know) ..... the answer.  
 g) The students (stand) ..... up when the teacher arrived.  
 h) It was cold, but I (wear) ..... two pullovers.  
 i) Anna (eat) ..... two plates of spaghetti.  
 j) Rick (tell) ..... us the time.

**3**

Rewrite the paragraph in the past simple. Use the verbs underlined.

A Day in the Life of Mrs Green  
 Mrs Green is a famous writer. She usually gets up at 6.00. She goes to the bathroom, and then she puts on her clothes. After that she has breakfast and reads the newspaper. Then she makes her bed. From 7.00 to 10.00 she sits in the living-room and watches television. Then she goes shopping. At 1.00 she comes home and eats her lunch. After lunch she begins work. She writes from 2.00 to 9.00. She drinks a lot of tea. Then she meets her friends at a night-club.

Mrs Green's Day  
*Yesterday was a normal day for Georgina Green, the writer. She got up at 6.00...*

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

# Unit 11

*you didn't go, she didn't eat*  
*Did you go? Did she eat?*

Past simple: irregular negative and questions

## Negatives

*go → went    eat → ate*

*We didn't go to school last week.*

*Katy didn't eat an ice-cream yesterday.*

<i>I did not go</i>	<i>he did not go</i>	<i>we did not go</i>
<i>I didn't go</i>	<i>he didn't go</i>	<i>we didn't go</i>
<i>you did not go</i>	<i>she did not go</i>	<i>they did not go</i>
<i>you didn't go</i>	<i>she didn't go</i>	<i>they didn't go</i>
	<i>it did not go</i>	
	<i>it didn't go</i>	

## Examples

*They didn't give Jack a present.*

*I didn't have breakfast.*

## Questions

*Did you go to the cinema last night?*

<i>Did I go?</i>	<i>Did he go?</i>	<i>Did we go?</i>
<i>Did you go?</i>	<i>Did she go?</i>	<i>Did they go?</i>
	<i>Did it go?</i>	

## Examples

*Did you send me a letter last week?*

*Where did you go yesterday?*

*What did you do?*

**1**

Write a question for each answer.



- a) *...Did Nick fly to the USA.....?* Yes, Nick flew to the USA.
- b) .....? Yes, Ana went to Italy.
- c) .....? Yes, Jack found the money.
- d) .....? Yes, Helén knew the answer.
- e) .....? Yes, Alex gave Sue a present.
- f) .....? Yes, Pat brought the flowers.
- g) .....? Yes, Kate sent Mike a letter.
- h) .....? Yes, Alan made the cake.
- i) .....? Yes, Tina wore a hat.
- j) .....? Yes, Rick felt ill.

**2**

Make negative sentences.

- a) Tom and Anna had breakfast. *...Tom and Anna didn't have breakfast....*
- b) Mike took the bus. ....
- c) Maria and Carlos did the homework. ....
- d) Catherine got a prize. ....
- e) Peter knew the teacher. ....
- f) Sam went to university. ....
- g) Paula ate a sandwich. ....
- h) Murat and Soraya ran fast. ....
- i) Joe made mistakes. ....
- j) Carla came early. ....

**3**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- a) When (you, come) *...did you come.....* to this country?
- b) Jack (not, wear) ..... his raincoat.
- c) Pat (leave) ..... his coat in the hall.
- d) How many pages (you, write) .....?
- e) What (the teacher, say) .....?
- f) (you, not, tell) ..... us your name.
- g) (you, go) ..... to the basketball match yesterday?
- h) Ann (not, know) ..... the other girl's name.
- i) Which books (you, take) ..... to school?
- j) (Jane, not, get) ..... any letters.

# Unit 12

**I was, you were** Past simple of be

## Statements

*At 8.00 last night I was at home.*

<i>I was</i>	<i>he was</i>	<i>we were</i>
<i>you were</i>	<i>she was</i>	<i>they were</i>
	<i>it was</i>	

## Examples

*Dave and Sue were at the cinema last night.*

*It was very cold yesterday.*

*I was ill last week.*

## Negatives

*I wasn't here yesterday.*

<i>I was not</i>	<i>he was not</i>	<i>we were not</i>
<i>I wasn't</i>	<i>he wasn't</i>	<i>we weren't</i>
<i>you were not</i>	<i>she was not</i>	<i>they were not</i>
<i>you weren't</i>	<i>she wasn't</i>	<i>they weren't</i>
	<i>it was not</i>	
	<i>it wasn't</i>	

## Examples

*Kate wasn't happy at work last year.*

*We weren't at home last night.*

*I was late yesterday.*

## Questions

*Was it cold yesterday?*

<i>Was I?</i>	<i>Was he?</i>	<i>Were we?</i>
<i>Were you?</i>	<i>Was she?</i>	<i>Were they?</i>
	<i>Was it?</i>	

## Examples

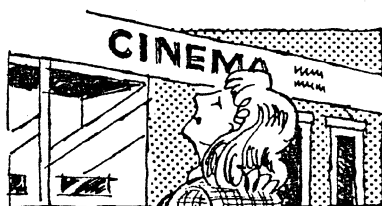
*Were you at home at 6.00 last night?*

*Was Harry in London yesterday?*

*Were you at school on Tuesday?*

**1**

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences and questions.



at the cinema



at work



at home



at school

- a) Where was Helen yesterday? Helen *...was at the cinema...*
- b) Where were Yannis and Emma? Yannis and Emma .....
- c) Where was Nick? Nick .....
- d) Where were Liz and Jane? Liz and Jane .....
- e) *...Was Helen...* at home yesterday?  
Helen *...wasn't at home...* She was at the cinema.
- f) ..... at school yesterday?  
Yannis and Emma ..... They were at home.
- g) ..... at home yesterday?  
Nick ..... He was at work.
- h) ..... at the cinema yesterday?  
Liz and Jane ..... They were at school.

**2**

Make questions.

- a) Jim/at home/last night *...Was Jim at home last night.....?*
- b) you/at school/on Monday .....
- c) David/here/yesterday .....
- d) the cinema/open/on Sunday .....
- e) Kate and Jane/late/yesterday .....
- f) you/in the football team/last year .....
- g) all your friends/at your party .....
- h) it/hot/last week .....

**3**

Make negative sentences.

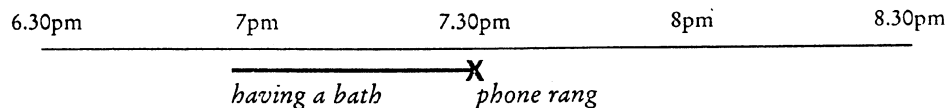
- a) Kevin and Mel/at my party *...Kevin and Mel weren't at my party.....*
- b) Nick/in class yesterday .....
- c) It/warm/yesterday .....
- d) Tina and Jim/late .....
- e) Eddy/on the bus .....
- f) We/at the match yesterday .....
- g) Our teachers/pleased with us .....
- h) I/at the restaurant .....

# Unit 13

***I was reading, we were reading***  
***I wasn't reading, we weren't reading***  
***Was she reading? Were you reading?***

Past continuous: affirmative,  
negative and questions

We use the past continuous to describe a continuing situation. We often interrupt a continuing situation with a sudden event.



*Nadia phoned me at 7.30. I was having a bath.*

## Statements

*Last month I was working in Brazil.*

<i>I was sitting.</i>	<i>He was sitting.</i>	<i>We were sitting.</i>
<i>You were sitting.</i>	<i>She was sitting.</i>	<i>They were sitting.</i>
	<i>It was sitting.</i>	

## Negatives

*The teacher was talking, but Harry wasn't listening.*

was not = wasn't    were not = weren't

<i>I wasn't sitting.</i>	<i>He wasn't sitting.</i>	<i>We weren't sitting.</i>
<i>You weren't sitting.</i>	<i>She wasn't sitting.</i>	<i>They weren't sitting.</i>
	<i>It wasn't sitting.</i>	

## Questions

*Were they working in the office?*

<i>Was I sitting?</i>	<i>Was he sitting?</i>	<i>Were we sitting?</i>
<i>Were you sitting?</i>	<i>Was she sitting?</i>	<i>Were they sitting?</i>
	<i>Was it sitting?</i>	

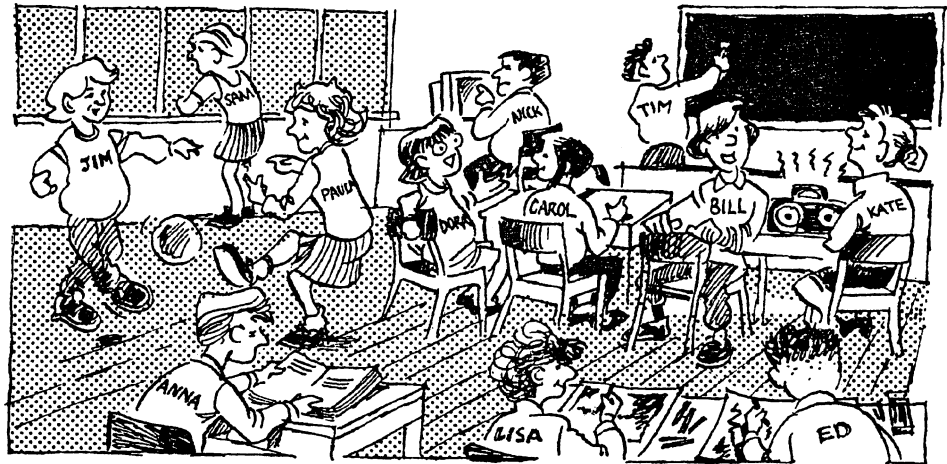
## Wh- questions

*What were you doing at 6.00?    Who was he talking to?*

## Examples

*Steve was eating in the restaurant when the fire started.*  
*Carmen wasn't teaching in 1990, she was studying.*  
*Were you eating dinner when I phoned?*





**1**  
This is a picture of the classroom at 2.00 yesterday. Make sentences about the picture. Use a verb from the box.

play football   read a book   listen to music   write on the board  
draw pictures   use a computer   look out of the window   talk

- a) Anna *...was reading a book...*
- b) Paula and Jim .....
- c) Tim .....
- d) Kate and Bill .....
- e) Sam .....
- f) Ed and Lisa .....
- g) Nick .....
- h) Carol and Dora .....

**2**  
Correct each sentence.

- a) Anna was drawing pictures. *...Anna wasn't drawing pictures.....*
- b) Paula and Jim were using a computer. ....
- c) Tim was reading a book. ....
- d) Kate and Bill were writing on the board. ....
- e) Sam was talking. ....
- f) Ed and Lisa were listening to music. ....
- g) Nick was looking out of the window. ....
- h) Carol and Dora were playing football. ....

**3**  
Make questions.

- a) Tim/draw pictures *...Was Tim drawing pictures.....?*
- b) Kate and Bill/use a computer .....?
- c) Ed and Lisa/read a book .....?
- d) Paula and Jim/write on the board .....?
- e) Anna/talk .....?
- f) Sam/listen to music .....?
- g) Carol and Dora/look out of the window .....?
- h) Nick/play football .....?

# Unit 14 Consolidation 2

## 1

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- a) Tom (look) ..... *looked* ..... out the window.
- b) We (take) ..... the bus from the airport to the city centre.
- c) Laura (read) ..... the book all afternoon.
- d) Kate (close) ..... all the windows and doors.
- e) Sam (live) ..... in a cottage in the country.
- f) An old friend (come) ..... to see me yesterday.
- g) I (see) ..... an interesting film last week.
- h) Sue (wait) ..... for her friends for more than an hour.

## 2

Match the questions a) to h) with the answers 1) to 8).

- a) What were you doing when you saw the accident? ..5.
- b) Did you go to Italy last summer? .....
- c) What did you do last weekend? .....
- d) What did you do when you saw the two men? .....
- e) Did you go to school yesterday? .....
- f) Did you have a good time at the party? .....
- g) When did you find the money? .....
- h) Did Paula phone yesterday? .....

- 1) Yes, I really enjoyed myself.
- 2) I called the police.
- 3) Yes, she phoned while you were playing golf.
- 4) Yes, I spent three weeks there.
- 5) I was standing at the bus-stop.
- 6) While I was cleaning the floor.
- 7) I met my friends, and spent time with my family.
- 8) No, I was ill. I stayed at home.

## 3

Write a second sentence with a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use a negative form of a verb from the box.

close   forget   get up   like   miss   sit down   stop   win
---

- a) David caught the train. ...*David didn't miss the train*.....
- b) Cristina remembered her book. ....
- c) The lesson continued. ....
- d) John opened the door. ....
- e) Terry stayed in bed. ....
- f) Karen hated Chinese food. ....
- g) Chris's team lost the match. ....
- h) I stood up on the bus all the way home. ....

**4**  
Correct each sentence or question.

- a) Where did you went last night? *...Where did you go last night?.....*
- b) I didn't knew the answer. ....
- c) Harry maked a lot of noise. ....
- d) I didn't liked my new teacher. ....
- e) Took you your medicine? ....
- f) Helen comed home late last night. ....
- g) I didn't got up early this morning. ....
- h) What did you saw at the cinema? ....

**5**  
Write a question for each answer.

- a) Were *..you working last night.....*?  
Last night? No, I wasn't working last night.
- b) Was .....?  
Yes, that's right. Tim was waiting at the bus-stop.
- c) Was .....?  
No, Mary wasn't talking.
- d) Was .....?  
Yes, that's right. Kate was wearing jeans.
- e) Were .....?  
Yes, Ali and Mehmet were playing football.
- f) Was .....?  
Raining? Yes, it was.
- g) Were .....?  
No, I wasn't reading. I was writing.
- h) Was .....?  
Yes, that's right. Tina was eating her breakfast.

**6**  
Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous.

- a) (you, wait) *...Were you waiting.....* for Bill when he arrived at the airport?
- b) While (Mary, have) ..... lunch, it started raining.
- c) When the bell rang, (we, play) ..... basketball.
- d) Who (you, dance) ..... with at the party last night?
- e) While (Sue, shop) ....., she met an old friend.
- f) (Some of the boys, look) ..... out of the window.
- g) While (we, wait) ..... for a taxi, a bus stopped nearby.
- h) While (I, walk) ..... home, I ate a sandwich.

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the difference between the past simple and the past continuous.  
When do we use the past simple? When do we use the past continuous?  
Do you have the same differences in your language?
- 2 Revise the past simple forms of irregular verbs.

# Unit 15

***I was walking, I walked*** Past continuous and past simple

We often contrast a continuing situation with a sudden event.

## Statements

*I was writing a letter when Paul phoned.*  
(continuing situation) (sudden event)

6.20pm                      7pm                      7.30pm                      8pm                      8.30pm

---

writing a letter                      X                      telephone rang

*I started the letter at 7.00.*

*Paul phoned at 8.00.*

*I was writing a letter when Paul phoned.*

*While I was writing a letter, Paul phoned.*

*While I was waiting for the bus, I saw the accident.*

(continuing situation) (sudden event)

10am

11am

*I started waiting for the bus at 10.00.*

*I saw the accident at 10.30.*

*I saw the accident while I was waiting for the bus.*

*I was waiting for the bus when I saw the accident.*

## Questions

*What were you doing when I phoned?*

*I was writing a letter when you phoned.*

*When did you see the accident?*

*I saw the accident while I was waiting for the bus.*

**1**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- While I was doing/did my homework, I had a good idea.
- Jim was breaking/broke his leg when he was playing golf.
- When I arrived, I was going/went into the kitchen.
- We were finding/found an old box while we were digging in the garden.
- I was seeing/saw an old friend while I was waiting for the train.
- While I had/was having a bath, the phone rang.
- Anna was meeting/met Judy while she was doing some shopping.
- While Joe was cooking/cooked lunch, Clare arrived.
- Someone was taking/took Peter's bag while he was making a phone call.
- While Maria was walking home, she was losing/lost her money.

**2**

Put the verb in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

- When I (come) ...*came*..... home my family (do) ...*was doing*..... the garden.
- For lunch yesterday Chris (eat) ..... spaghetti.
- When the teacher (come) ..... into the room, two boys (play) ..... football.
- Peter (turn on) ..... the TV, but nothing (happen) .....
- When Helen (walk) ..... to school, she (see) ..... the old man again.
- While we (run) ..... in the park, Mary (fall over) .....
- At 7.00 Tony (get) ..... out of bed, and (go) ..... into the bathroom.
- While Kate (drink) ..... some milk, she (drop) ..... the glass.
- While I (listen) ..... to music, I (hear) ..... the doorbell.
- I (break) ..... my pen while I (do) ..... my homework.

**3**

Complete the paragraph in the past simple or the past continuous.

- Last week my friend Sandy and I (a) ...*decided*..... (decide) to go to the beach on the bus. While we (b) ..... (wait) for the bus, it suddenly (c) ..... (start) to rain. We (d) ..... (wear) summer clothes, and we (e) ..... (not have) an umbrella. While we (f) ..... (stand) there in the rain, Sandy's mother (g) ..... (drive) past, so we (h) ..... (wave) to her. Luckily, she (i) ..... (notice) us, and (j) ..... (take) us home in the car.

# Unit 16

***I used to play, he didn't use to play***    Past habits: *used to*  
***Did he use to play?***

We use *used to* when we describe a state or habit in the past.

## Statements

*I used to play tennis.*

*I used to play    he used to play    we used to play, etc.*

## Negatives

*Sheila didn't use to play basketball.*

*I didn't use to play    she didn't use to play    we didn't use to play, etc.*

Also possible: *I didn't used to play*

## Questions

*Did they use to play football?*

*Did he use to play?    Did you use to play?    Did they use to play? etc.*

We often use *used to* to contrast a past habit with what we do now.

*I used to have a motorbike when I was younger.*    (past state)

*I used to drink coffee, but now I drink tea.*    (past habit)

There is no present form of *used to*.

The past simple is also possible in these examples, but *used to* is more common.

*I had a motorbike when I was younger.*

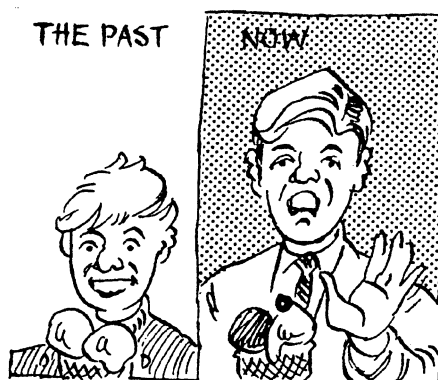
*I played tennis, but now I play football.*

## Pronunciation

*used to* = /ju:z tə/

past tense of the verb *use* = /ju:zd/

**1**  
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



a) David



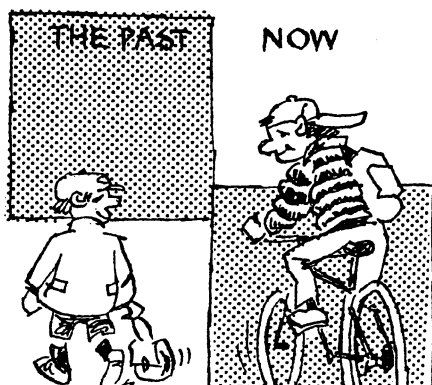
d) Kate



b) Anna



e) Carol



c) Nick



f) Jack

- a) like ice-cream/hate it
- b) live in the country/in the city
- c) walk to school/ride a bike
- d) get up late/early
- e) have long hair/short hair
- f) be short/tall

*...David used to like ice-cream, but now he hates it...*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Rewrite each sentence or question with *used to*.

- a) I was in the school tennis team.  
*...used to be in the school tennis team.....*
- b) Sophie had long hair when she was at school.  
.....
- c) Mary didn't listen when her teachers were speaking.  
.....
- d) Ricardo got up at 6.00 when he was training for the Olympics.  
.....
- e) What did you usually do on Saturday evenings?  
.....
- f) My brother wore glasses when he was small.  
.....
- g) Becky was afraid of dogs when she was a girl.  
.....
- h) We always gave our teachers presents at the end of term.  
.....
- i) Paul spoke Italian well but he has forgotten it.  
.....
- j) Did you live next door to Mrs Harrison?  
.....

**3**

Complete the personal details.

- a) I used to drink ....., but now I don't.
- b) I used to live in ....., but now I don't.
- c) I used to go to ....., but now I don't.
- d) I used to play with ....., but now I don't.
- e) I used to read ....., but now I don't.
- f) I used to watch ..... on TV, but now I don't.
- g) I used to listen to ....., but now I don't.
- h) I used to get up at ....., but now I don't.
- i) I used to go to bed at ....., but now I don't.
- j) I used to sit next to ....., but now I don't.

**4**

What did your parents use to do?

*When my mother was a child, she used to ..... and .....*  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



# Unit 17

***I've started, she's started*** Present perfect: affirmative  
***I've eaten, he's eaten***

We often explain a present situation by saying what has happened. We do not mention an exact time.

*Why are you walking home? I've broken my bike.*  
*Why are you late? I've lost my watch.*



We use the present perfect when we talk about our experiences in the past and do not mention an exact time.

*I've been to Italy.*

## Regular verbs

Forming the present perfect: *have/has + past participle*

*The film has started.*  
*I've finished my homework.*

With regular verbs, the the past participle is the same as the past simple.

## Statements

<i>I have started</i>	<i>he has started</i>	<i>we have started</i>
<i>I've started</i>	<i>he's started</i>	<i>we've started</i>
<i>you have started</i>	<i>she has started</i>	<i>they have started</i>
<i>you've started</i>	<i>she's started</i>	<i>they've started</i>
	<i>it has started</i>	
	<i>it's started</i>	

## Irregular verbs

Forming the present perfect: *have/has + past participle*

*I've eaten ten pizzas!*  
*Jim has left.*

Each irregular verb has its own past participle. Sometimes the participle is the same as the past simple, sometimes it is has a different form.

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
<i>eat</i>	<i>ate</i>	<i>eaten</i>
<i>leave</i>	<i>left</i>	<i>left</i>
<i>drink</i>	<i>drank</i>	<i>drunk</i>

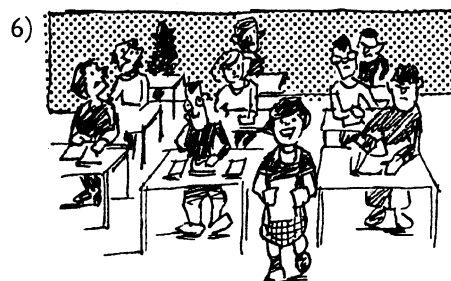
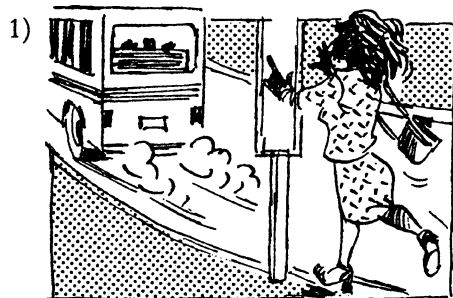
**Statements**

<i>I have eaten</i>	<i>he has eaten</i>	<i>we have eaten</i>
<i>you have eaten</i>	<i>she has eaten</i>	<i>they have eaten</i>
	<i>it has eaten</i>	

- There is a list of irregular verbs on page 237.

**1**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) I've broken my pencil. ....3.
- b) I've left my homework at home. ....
- c) I've been to Italy. ....
- d) I've finished! ....
- e) I've missed the bus. ....
- f) I've seen this film. ....

**2**

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect.

- a) Harry (do) ..... *has done* ..... the housework.  
 b) Kate and Bill (find) ..... a new flat.  
 c) Nick (write) ..... a book.  
 d) We (decide) ..... to start jogging.  
 e) Sam and Dave (eat) ..... all the sandwiches.  
 f) Carlos (buy) ..... a dog.  
 g) Maria and Helen (start) ..... at a new school.  
 h) Frances (break) ..... her cup.  
 i) I (lose) ..... my umbrella.  
 j) Max (take) ..... the dog for a walk.

**3**

Complete each sentence with *has/have* and a participle from the box.

broken	bought	eaten	finished	found
happened	left	lost	taken	written

- a) My dog ..... *has eaten* ..... my sandwich!  
 b) Helen ..... her bag.  
 c) I'm sorry. I ..... your pen.  
 d) Where's my dictionary? Someone ..... it!  
 e) We're too late. The programme .....  
 f) Tina isn't here. She .....  
 g) There is water on the floor! What .....?  
 h) I ..... your book! Here it is!  
 i) Jack ..... five letters.  
 j) I ..... some new shoes. Do you like them?

**4**

Complete each sentence with the present perfect form of one of the verbs in the box.

arrive	decide	have	make	miss
phone	read	see	spend	wash

- a) Oh no! That's the last bus, and we .... *have missed* .... it.  
 b) (you) ..... any James Bond books? They're really good.  
 c) I haven't got any more money. I ..... all of it!  
 d) I ..... an idea! Let's go to *Big Burger's*!  
 e) We know what we want. We ..... to have pizza.  
 f) Your hair looks terrible! (you) ..... it?  
 g) Hurry up, Carol. Your taxi ..... It's waiting outside.  
 h) I'm sorry I (not) ..... the travel agent. I've been very busy.  
 i) (you) ..... *Titanic*? It's my favourite film.  
 j) Read this again. You ..... some mistakes.

# Unit 18

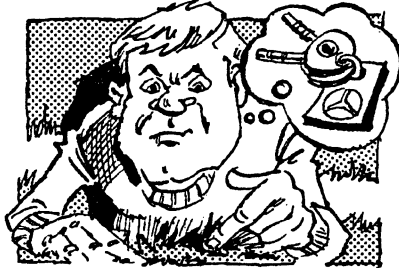
***we haven't started, she hasn't eaten***  
***Have you started? Has he eaten?***

Present perfect: negative and questions

## Negatives

*I haven't visited China before.*  
*This is the first time.*

*I have not found my car keys.*  
*I'm still looking for them.*



have not = haven't      has not = hasn't

Regular		Irregular	
<i>I haven't started</i>	<i>we haven't started</i>	<i>I haven't eaten</i>	<i>we haven't eaten</i>
<i>you haven't started</i>	<i>they haven't started</i>	<i>you haven't eaten</i>	<i>they haven't eaten</i>
<i>he hasn't started</i>		<i>he hasn't eaten</i>	
<i>she hasn't started</i>		<i>she hasn't eaten</i>	
<i>it hasn't started</i>		<i>it hasn't eaten</i>	

## Questions

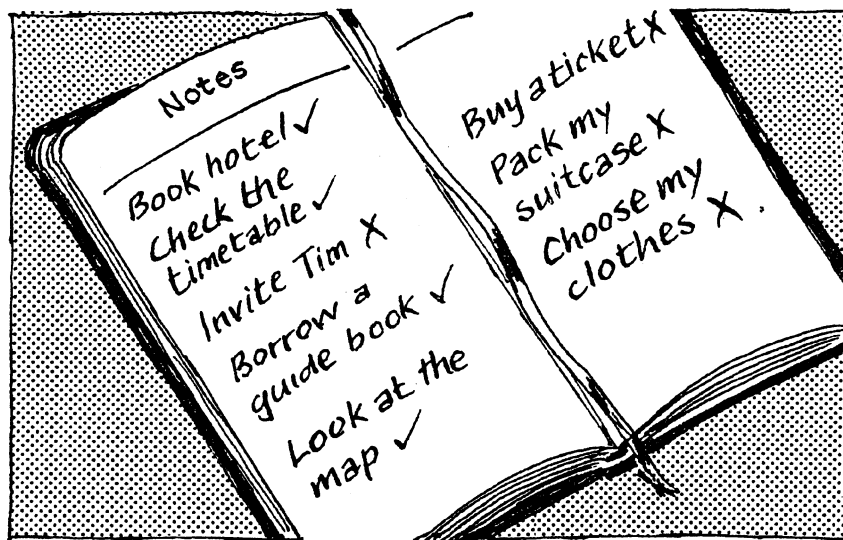
*Have you started your homework?*      *I've finished it!*

*Have you ever visited Cairo?*      *Yes, I've been there twice.*

Regular		Irregular	
<i>Have I started?</i>	<i>Have we started?</i>	<i>Have I eaten?</i>	<i>Have we eaten?</i>
<i>Have you started?</i>	<i>Have they started?</i>	<i>Have you eaten?</i>	<i>Have they eaten?</i>
<i>Has he started?</i>		<i>Has he eaten?</i>	
<i>Has she started?</i>		<i>Has she eaten?</i>	
<i>Has it started?</i>		<i>Has it eaten?</i>	

- See Unit 20 for time words with the present perfect simple and the past simple.

Read Nick's list of 'Things to Do' for his holiday.



**1**

Write questions about Nick's list. Use the words in brackets.

- a) (hotel) ..... *Has he booked the hotel* ..... ?
- b) (Tim) ..... ?
- c) (map) ..... ?
- d) (suitcase) ..... ?
- e) (timetable) ..... ?
- f) (guide book) ..... ?
- g) (ticket) ..... ?
- h) (clothes) ..... ?

**2**

Write sentences about what Nick has and hasn't done.

- a) (hotel) ..... *He's booked the hotel* ..... ?
- b) (Tim) ..... ?
- c) (map) ..... ?
- d) (suitcase) ..... ?
- e) (timetable) ..... ?
- f) (guide book) ..... ?
- g) (ticket) ..... ?
- h) (clothes) ..... ?

**3**

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple.

Dear Mum and Dad,  
 We (a) *have enjoyed* (enjoy) our holiday so far. We (b) ..... (not do) any sight seeing. We (c) ..... (spend) a lot of time on the beach. Luckily, it (d) ..... (not rain). Tim (e) ..... (learn) wind-surfing. I (f) ..... (not try) it. I think it's dangerous!  
 We (g) ..... (make) some friends. (h) ..... (you receive) my other postcards?  
 Love, Nick

# Unit 19

**he's left, he left** Present perfect and past simple  
**been and gone**

## Contrast

*Sorry, he isn't here. He's left.*

*Sorry, he isn't here. He left at 8.00.*

*Wiggs has scored a goal!*

We are not interested in when he did this. We are interested that he has scored!

*Wiggs scored a goal in the second minute of the match.*

We are interested in the time when he scored.

*I've broken my pen. Now I can't write my essay!*

This explains why we can't do something *now*.

*I broke my pen at school in the maths test.*

This explains what happened, where it happened and when it happened.

*Have you been to China? Yes.*

*When did you go to China? I went in 1998.*

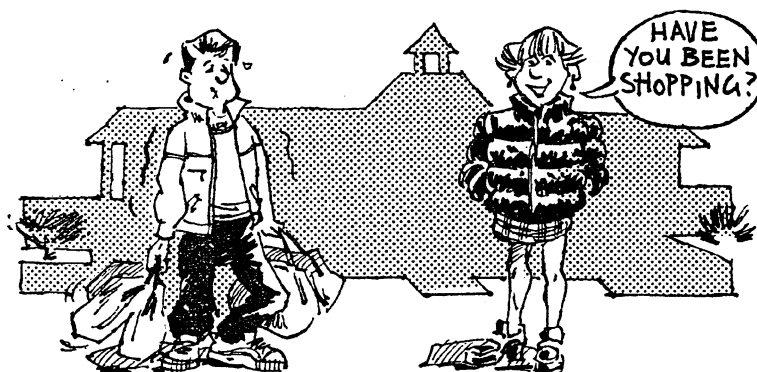
## been and gone

*Kate has been to school.*

*She's at home now.*

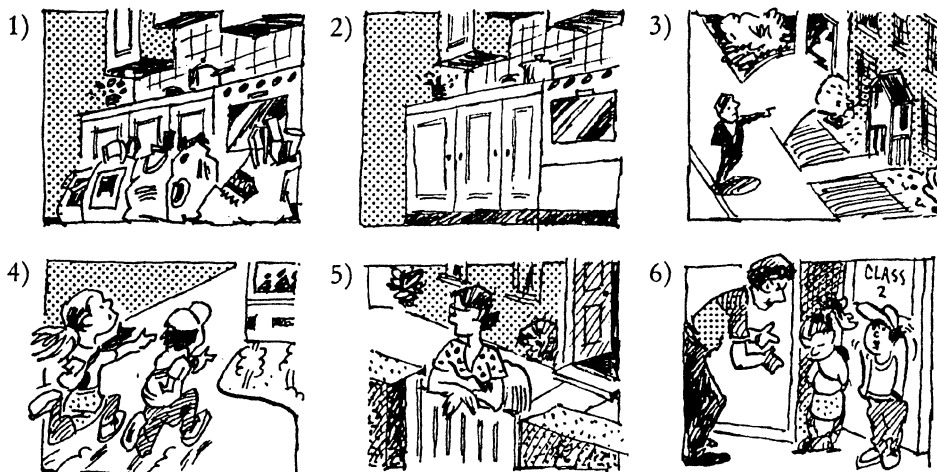
*Kate has gone to school.*

*She's not at home.*



**1**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) I lived here for ten years.      ..3.  
 b) I have lived here for ten years.      .....  
 c) Pat has gone shopping.      .....  
 d) Pat has been shopping.      .....  
 e) We've missed the bus.      .....  
 f) We missed the bus.      .....

**2**

Choose the correct verb underlined in each sentence or question.

- a) Can I have another book? I ve read/read this one.  
 b) I'm not ready. I didn't finish/haven't finished my homework.  
 c) I can't find my wallet. I think I've lost/lost it.  
 d) Did you eat/Have you eaten spaghetti last night?  
 e) Harry left/has left at 10.30.  
 f) Hurry up, Jim! You didn't start/haven't started!  
 g) Did you see/Have you seen this film last year?  
 h) Sorry, I can't play football. I've hurt/hurt my leg.  
 i) Where did you go/have you been last night?  
 j) Someone took/has taken my pen! Where is it?

**3**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or present perfect.

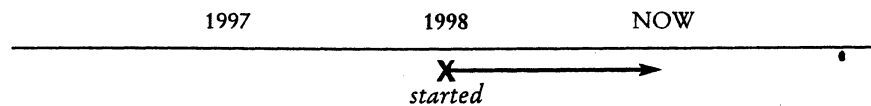
- a) Where (you go) ..... did you go ..... for your holidays last year?  
 b) I can't play any more. I (just hurt) ..... my foot.  
 c) Jane is a famous writer, and (write) ..... over fifty books.  
 d) Sorry, I (not finish) ..... my letters yet.  
 e) I (miss) ..... the end of the film last night. What (happen) .....?  
 f) I (lose) ..... my keys on Monday but I (find) ..... them on Tuesday.  
 g) 'We had a great party last week.' 'Who (you, invite) .....?'  
 h) Where (you, meet) ..... Sam? Was it at the sports centre?  
 i) Peter (not play) ..... basketball for a month.  
 j) (you, see) ..... my ruler? It was here a moment ago.

# Unit 20

**ever, never, yet, already, just, for, since, ago** Present perfect and past simple: time expressions

We use the present perfect with:

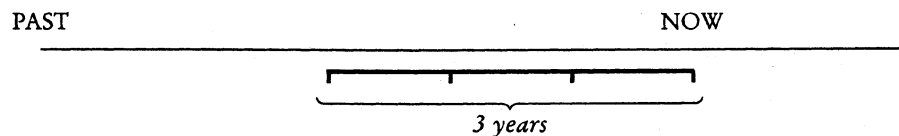
- *ever, never*  
*Have you ever seen a lion? I've never seen a lion.*
- *just*  
*Is Peter here? No, he's just gone out. There he is!*
- *yet* with negatives and questions  
*I haven't finished yet.*  
*Have you finished your homework yet? No, I'm still doing it.*
- *already* with statements  
*Have a sandwich!*  
*No thanks, I've already eaten. I had lunch at 12.00.*
- *since*



*I've lived in this town since 1998. I live here now.*  
1998 is the time I started living here.

We can use the present perfect or the past simple with:

- *for*  
*I've lived in this house for three years. I live in it now.*  
*I lived in that flat for two years, but I don't live there now.*



*I've lived in this town for three years. I live here now.*  
Three years is the period of time I've lived here.

Compare with *since*.

We use the past simple with:

- *ago*  
*I started learning English a year ago.*



**1**

Match the sentences and questions with similar meanings.

- a) Jim has just written a book. .5.  
 b) Has Jim written a book yet? .....  
 c) Jim has already written a book. ....  
 d) Jim wrote a book a year ago. ....  
 e) Jim has never written a book. ....  
 f) Has Jim ever written a book? .....  
 g) Jim has written two books since 1996. ....  
 h) Jim has written books for ten years. ....
- 1) This is not his first book.  
 2) Does Jim write books?  
 3) He finished his book last year.  
 4) Jim started work as an author ten years ago.  
 5) He finished a few days ago.  
 6) Jim started writing in 1996 and has written two books between then and now.  
 7) Jim doesn't write books.  
 8) Has he finished a book?

**2**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Have you ever/yet visited Slovenia?  
 b) Tim has for/just come back from the USA.  
 c) I'm not hungry. I've already/since eaten.  
 d) Jane lived in Greece since/for fifteen years.  
 e) Brian and Claire got married ten years ago/since ten years.  
 f) I can't come out. I haven't done my homework already/yet.  
 g) Mark has worked in Turkey ago/since 1998.  
 h) I haven't understood anything for/since the film started!  
 i) Jack was here since a moment/a moment ago, but he has left.  
 j) I haven't been to the cinema for/since three months.

**3**

Complete each sentence with a time word. Use a word from the box. Some words can be used more than once.

already	ever	for	just	never	since	yet
---------	------	-----	------	-------	-------	-----

- a) Sue has been on the beach .....for..... an hour, but she hasn't had a swim yet.  
 b) I don't want to see this film. I've ..... seen it.  
 c) Have you ..... been to the Greek islands?  
 d) Can you wait a moment? I haven't finished .....  
 e) Ouch! An insect has ..... bitten me!  
 f) George has ..... eaten Chinese food, so this is the first time for him!  
 g) I know what we can do! I've ..... had a great idea!  
 h) Rick has lived in Japan ..... 1998.  
 i) This is my first pet frog. I've ..... had one before.  
 j) Juan and Isabella have known each other ..... three years.

## Unit 21 Consolidation 3

### 1

Correct each sentence. Use the past continuous or the past simple.

- When I was arriving at Dan's house, he was waiting outside. ....*arrived*.....
- While we were writing a maths test, the head teacher was coming into the room. ....
- While we swam, it started to rain. ....
- While I was having a bath, the lights were going out. ....
- Debra watched television when the storm began. ....
- While I was walking to the shop I was losing my bag! ....
- What were you doing when I was seeing you yesterday? ....
- I was walking up the stairs when I was hearing the phone. ....

### 2

Put **one** word in each space.

- Kate has .....*taken*..... twenty photos of the children so far.
- Have you ever ..... this book? It's really good.
- Have you ever ..... to Egypt?
- The dog's not hungry. It hasn't ..... its dinner.
- I'm going to bed. I think I've ..... a cold.
- Oh no! I've ..... my bag on the bus.
- Jim has just ..... a new mountain bike. It was very expensive.
- The washing machine doesn't work. I think I've ..... it.

### 3

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.

- Tina isn't here. She (just go) .....*has just gone*..... to school.
- What time (you get up) ..... this morning?
- Paul (have) ..... a bad car accident three years ago.
- I (live) ..... in the same house since 1990.
- What (you do) ..... last night?
- Brian (not finish) ..... his work yet.
- Tina (arrive) .....*here* in 1998.
- (you see) ..... *Hidden Danger*? It's a great film.

### 4

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 'Do you play tennis?' '....., but I stopped two years ago.'  
1) I've played    2) I used to play    3) I was playing
- 'How long ..... there?' 'From 1996 to 1998.'  
1) did you live    2) have you lived    3) do you live there
- 'Were you busy when I phoned?' 'I ..... my homework.'  
1) used to do    2) did    3) was doing
- 'Do you want to borrow this book?' 'Thanks, but I ..... it already.'  
1) read    2) have read    3) used to read
- 'Where's Tom?' 'He ..... at 2.30.'  
1) has left    2) used to leave    3) left
- I ..... long hair when I was young, but now my hair is short.  
1) have had    2) was having    3) used to have

**5**  
Complete each sentence or question with a time expression.

- a) Sam has worked for the same company ..... *for* ..... three years.
- b) Karen hasn't finished her project .....
- c) What have you ..... done?
- d) I waited at the bus-stop ..... two hours.
- e) I've ..... had a phone call from my brother in Canada.
- f) Helen has lived here ..... 1998.
- g) Have you ..... eaten Chinese food?
- h) ..... did you start learning Italian?

**6**  
Complete each sentence or question. Use the word in brackets.

- a) I last went to the cinema a long time ago. (haven't)  
I ..... *haven't been to the cinema* ..... for a long time.
- b) Jane rode a bike to school. (ride)  
Jane ..... to school.
- c) Peter is at school. (has)  
Peter ..... to school.
- d) Tim and Sue played in the garden every day. (used)  
Tim and Sue .....
- e) How long were you in Turkey? (stay)  
..... in Turkey?
- f) Joe started living here three years ago. (for)  
Joe ..... three years.
- g) Is this your first visit to Scotland? (have)  
..... before?
- h) It's 8.00 now and I came here at 6.00. (been)  
..... two hours.

**7**  
Correct each sentence or question.

- a) When have you arrived here? ..... *did you arrive* .....
- b) What do you have for lunch yesterday? .....
- c) What you were doing when I phoned you? .....
- d) I didn't do the shopping yet. ....
- e) When I was young I was wearing glasses. ....
- f) Dan arrived late because he was missing the bus. ....
- g) Peter, this is Mary. Did you meet before? .....
- h) I use to get up early every morning. ....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the difference between the present perfect simple and the past simple. When do we use the present perfect simple?
- 2 Revise the present perfect simple forms of irregular verbs.
- 3 When do we use *used to*?

# Unit 22

**He's going to stop.** Future plans and predictions  
**I'm not going to stop.**  
**Are you going to stop?**

## Plans or intentions

When you decide to do something in the future you make a plan or have an intention. Plans can change, so it is not 100% certain.

*I'm going to visit my family in New York.* This is my plan or intention.  
*Carol is going to study in France.* This is her plan or intention.

## Predictions from the situation

Sometimes we can see that something is going to happen.  
*Look out! Those books are going to fall on your head.*

## Statements

*He's going to stop eating chocolate.*

<i>I am going to stop</i>	<i>he is going to stop</i>	<i>we are going to stop</i>
<i>you are going to stop</i>	<i>she is going to stop</i>	<i>they are going to stop</i>
	<i>it is going to stop</i>	

## Negatives

*Clare isn't going to cook dinner.*

<i>I am not going to stop</i>	<i>he is not going to stop</i>	<i>we are not going to stop</i>
<i>you are not going to stop</i>	<i>she is not going to stop</i>	<i>they are not going to stop</i>
	<i>it is not going to stop</i>	

## Questions

*Are you going to take your umbrella?*

<i>Am I going to stop?</i>	<i>Is he going to stop?</i>	<i>Are we going to stop?</i>
<i>Are you going to stop?</i>	<i>Is she going to stop?</i>	<i>Are they going to stop?</i>
	<i>Is it going to stop?</i>	

## Wh- questions

*What are you going to do in the summer?*  
*When are you going to phone me?*

## Examples

*Is it going to rain?*  
*Mike's going to run in the Marathon in April.*  
*Peter is going to learn Chinese.*

- See Unit 5 for *he's not, she's not, etc.*

## Careful!

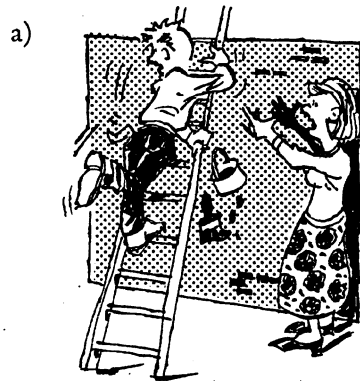
- See Unit 26 for *I'm going to come/go.*
- We do not use *gonna* in writing.



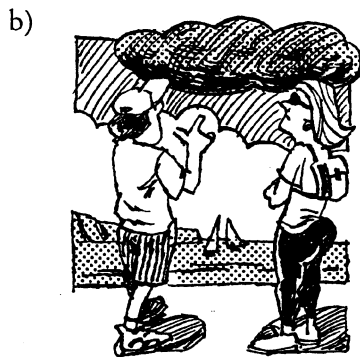
1

What is going to happen? Use the picture to complete each sentence. Use a verb from the box.

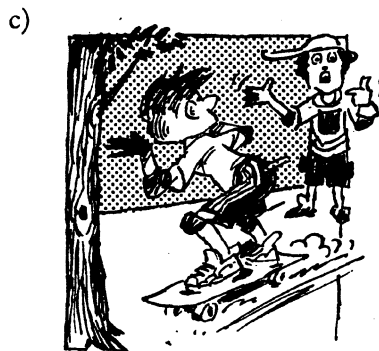
crash fall hit miss rain



Careful! You *are going to fall*.....!

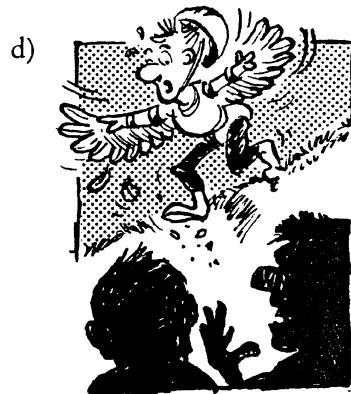


I think it .....



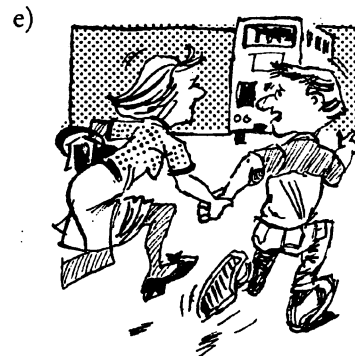
Look out! You .....

..... the tree!



Oh dear, I think he .....

.....



Hurry up, we .....

..... the bus.

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Complete each sentence. Use *going to* and the verb in brackets.

- a) (you, buy) ..... *Are you going to buy* ..... a new bike?
- b) Tom (not be) ..... a doctor.
- c) I (buy) ..... some new shoes.
- d) (Helen, catch) ..... the train?
- e) Who (carry) ..... the shopping for me?
- f) Jim and Dinah (not get) ..... married.
- g) Sam (take) ..... a holiday.
- h) What time (you, phone) ..... me?
- i) Where (we, eat) ..... tonight?
- j) I (not give) ..... a birthday present!

**3**

Rewrite each sentence or question with *going to*.

- a) Joe plans to buy a new computer next year.  
..... *Joe is going to buy a new computer next year* .....
- b) We don't plan to play tennis this weekend.  
.....
- c) Does Nick plan to join the sports club?  
.....
- d) What are your plans for next summer?  
.....
- e) Look! That tree is about to fall over!  
.....
- f) Do you plan to work hard this year?  
.....
- g) I don't intend to get a new car.  
.....
- h) The forecast for tomorrow is rain.  
.....
- i) Do Mike and Pat plan to make sandwiches for the party?  
.....
- j) I think it's about to snow.  
.....

**4**

What are you going to do next summer? Write sentences.

*Next summer I'm going to have a great holiday. I'm going to* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Unit 23

***I'll stop, I won't stop, Will you stop?  
expect, think,  
perhaps, probably,  
I'm sure***

Predictions  
Certainty and uncertainty

A prediction is what you think will happen.

*Jim will pass all his exams.      It will rain tomorrow.  
I'll be late tonight.              He will come to the party.*

Sometimes we emphasise that we are not certain. We can use *perhaps, probably, think* or *expect*.

*Jim will probably pass all his exams.      I expect it will rain tomorrow.  
Perhaps I'll be late tonight.              I think he will come to the party.*

## Statements

*They'll leave tomorrow.*

<i>I will leave</i>	<i>he will leave</i>	<i>we will leave</i>
<i>you will leave</i>	<i>she will leave</i>	<i>they will leave</i>
	<i>it will leave</i>	

*I'll leave, he'll leave, etc.*

Also: *I shall leave      we shall leave      (formal)*

## Negatives

*I won't be at school on Friday.*

will not = won't

<i>I won't leave</i>	<i>he won't leave</i>	<i>we won't leave</i>
<i>you won't leave</i>	<i>she won't leave</i>	<i>they won't leave</i>
	<i>it won't leave</i>	

Also: *I shan't leave      we shan't leave      (formal)*

## Questions

*Will the shop be open tomorrow?*

<i>Will I leave?</i>	<i>Will he leave?</i>	<i>Will we leave?</i>
<i>Will you leave?</i>	<i>Will she leave?</i>	<i>Will they leave?</i>
	<i>Will it leave?</i>	

Also: *Shall I leave?      Shall we leave?      (formal)*

- See Units 52 and 53 for uses of *Shall I?* and *Shall we?*

Elementary Language Practice

**Examples**

*I'll fly to Scotland next week.*

*It won't rain tomorrow.*

*Will the train be late?*

*I expect it will rain.*

*I think it will rain.*

*I'm sure it will rain.*

*I don't expect it will rain.*

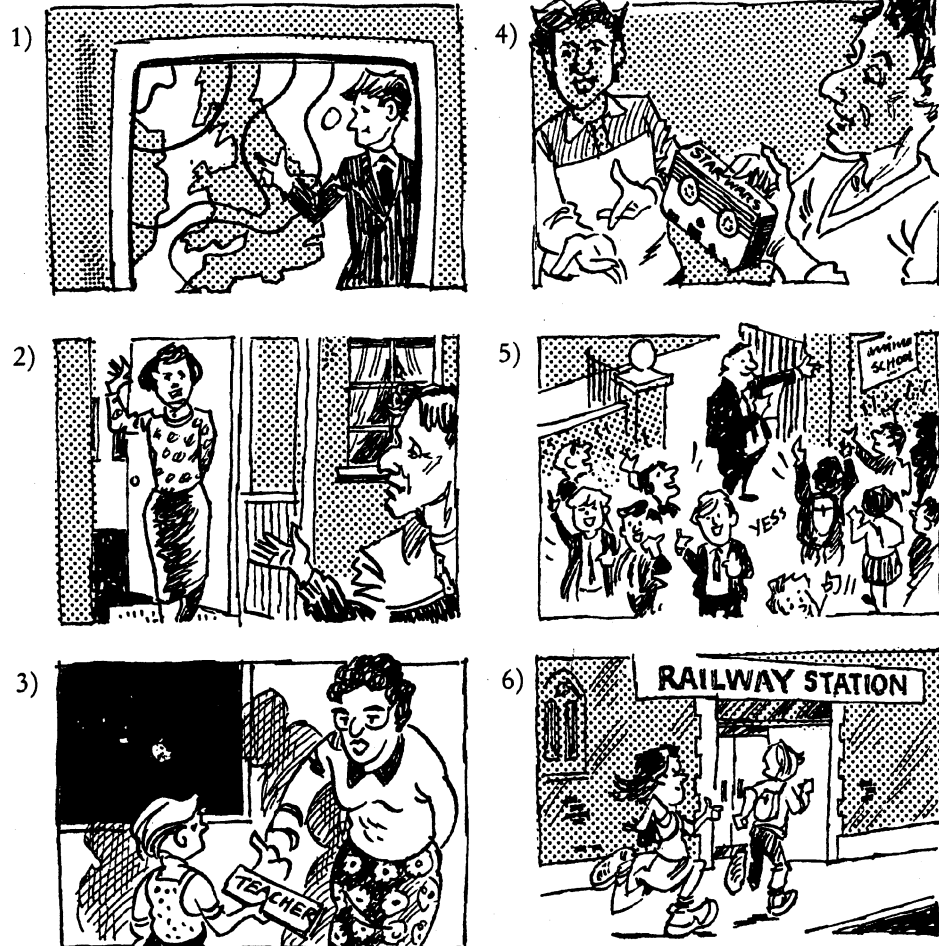
*I don't think it will rain.*

*I'm sure it won't rain.*

(certainty)

**1**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) There won't be any lessons today. ..5..
- b) I'll be home at 4.30. ....
- c) You'll enjoy this film. ....
- d) It'll rain later. ....
- e) I won't be here tomorrow. ....
- f) We'll be late! ....



2

Complete each sentence or question. Use *will* or *won't* and the verb in brackets.

- a) I (choose) ..... *I will choose* ..... the team next week.
- b) You (not have) ..... a lot of time to answer the questions.
- c) Mr Jones (be) ..... back at about 7.30.
- d) Dimitri (not know) ..... the answer.
- e) I'm sure Jane (like) ..... her birthday present.
- f) (you give) ..... us any homework on Friday?
- g) There (not be) ..... any lessons tomorrow.
- h) (we see) ..... you tomorrow evening?
- i) Lots of people (read) ..... Michael White's new book.
- j) I think our team (win) ..... the match.

3

Rewrite each sentence. Use the words in brackets.

- a) It'll be cold tomorrow. (I'm sure)  
..... *I'm sure it will be cold tomorrow* .....
- b) We'll win. (I expect)  
.....
- c) I'll leave now. (I think)  
.....
- d) Jim won't be late. (I'm sure)  
.....
- e) It won't take long. (I expect)  
.....
- f) You won't have any problems. (I'm sure)  
.....
- g) You'll enjoy the party. (I think)  
.....
- h) They won't decide anything yet. (I imagine)  
.....

4

Write some predictions about the future. Use the verbs in the box.

live travel work sleep study eat read have

*In the year 2050 people will live on the moon but they won't* .....

# Unit 24

***I'll do it, I won't do it*** Meetings, promises, decisions, refusing

We use *will* and *won't* when we make promises, decisions of the moment and when we refuse to do things.

- Meetings and appointments  
*I'll see you outside the cinema at 7.30.*  
*I'll see you later.*  
*I'll meet you for lunch.*
- Promises  
*I'll give you the money tomorrow.*  
*I won't forget.*  
*I won't do it again.*
- Decisions of the moment



Waiter: *What would you like?*  
Customer: *I'll have chicken, please.*

- Refusing  
*'Come here!' 'No, I won't!'*  
*'Apologize to your mother!' 'I won't'.*
- See Units 50, 51, 52, 53.

**1**

Complete each dialogue with a phrase from the box.

I'll bring it tomorrow I'll see you later  
 I won't I'll have a sandwich I won't forget  
 I'll see you outside the cinema

- a) 'Bye for now' 'Bye, ...*I'll see you later*.....'
- b) 'Give me that piece of cake!' 'No, .....! It's mine.'
- c) 'Where's your homework?' '....., I promise!'
- d) 'What would you like to eat?' '....., please.'
- e) 'Where are we going to meet?' '.....'
- f) 'Please remember to bring your dictionary tomorrow!'  
 'Don't worry, .....

**2**

Look at each picture and make a sentence with *will* or *won't*.



a) Decide to have the giant pizza.  
 ...*I'll have the giant pizza*.....  
 .....



c) Arrange to meet tomorrow at 6.30.  
 .....



b) Promise to be home before midnight.  
 .....



d) Decide to take the red pair.  
 .....



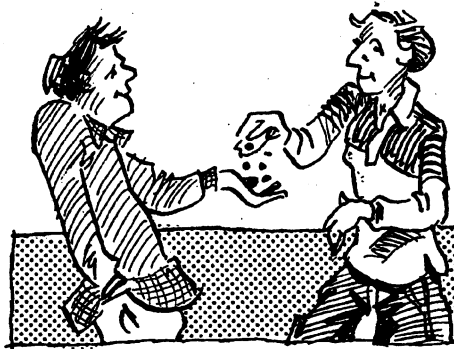
e) Refuse to do this!

.....  
.....



h) Promise to hand your homework in tomorrow.

.....  
.....



f) Promise to pay your friend back at the end of the week.

.....  
.....



i) Decide to come back another day.

.....  
.....



g) Tell the waiter that you want to have an orange juice.

.....  
.....



j) Arrange to see your friend next week.

.....  
.....

## Unit 25

***I'll be here at six.***      *will* and *going to*: problems  
***It's going to rain.***

It is difficult to decide when to use *will* and when to use *going to*.



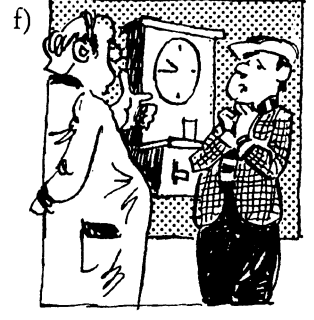
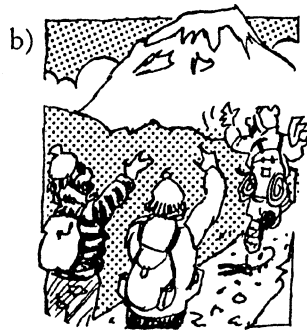
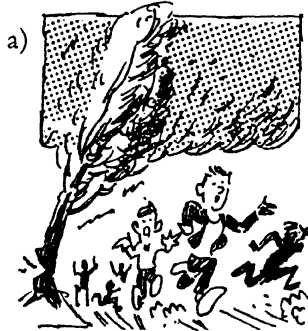
Study these examples.

- Plan  
*Do you want to go to the cinema this evening?*  
*No, I'm going to do lots of work this evening.*
- Intention  
*Are you going to play basketball tonight?*  
*No, I don't think so.*
- Promise  
*You haven't done your homework. Where is it?*  
*I'll do lots of work this evening.*
- Formal Prediction  
*Here is the weather forecast; tomorrow it will rain in the afternoon.*
- Prediction from clues  
*What do you think about the weather?*  
*It's going to rain this afternoon.*
- Refusing  
*Will you wash the floor?*  
*No, I won't! You made it dirty!*

*Elementary Language Practice*

**1**

Choose the best sentence or question for each picture.



- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| a) 1) That tree is going to fall! ✓ | d) 1) I'm not going to eat it.               |
| 2) That tree will fall!             | 2) I won't eat it.                           |
| b) 1) I'll be back!                 | e) 1) The President will arrive at 6.00.     |
| 2) I'm going to be back!            | 2) The President is going to arrive at 6.00. |
| c) 1) Are you going to play?        | f) 1) I won't be late tomorrow.              |
| 2) Will you play?                   | 2) I'm not going to be late tomorrow.        |

**2**

Choose the best word or phrase.

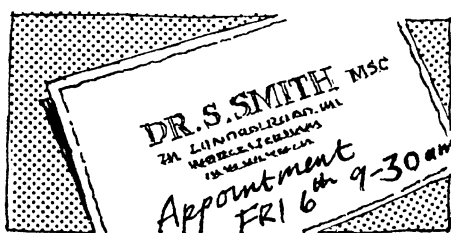
- a) Jane ..2.. a baby in the summer.  
1) will have    2) is going to have
- b) Bye for now. Perhaps ..... you later.  
1) I'll see    2) I'm going to see
- c) Next summer holidays, ..... stay with my relatives in New York.  
1) I'll    2) I'm going to
- d) The English test ..... on March 12th.  
1) will be    2) is going to be
- e) It was nice to talk to you. .... again tomorrow.  
1) I'll phone    2) I'm going to phone
- f) I don't know my plans for the summer. What .....?  
1) will you do    2) are you going to do
- g) Jim's tired, so he ..... early tonight.  
1) will go to bed    2) is going to go to bed
- h) Have you heard the news? Helen ..... to London.  
1) will move    2) is going to move

# Unit 26

***I'm leaving tomorrow.*** Present continuous: future use

We can use the present continuous when we talk about arrangements for the future. Arrangements are plans, but we are sure they will happen. We often write them in our diaries.

- *My parents are buying me a bike for my birthday.* (I'm sure about this.)
- *I'm going to the doctor's on Friday.* (It's fixed. I have an appointment.)



- ‘Are you doing anything on Saturday?’ ‘I’m having a party.’  
(It’s fixed. I’ve invited my friends.)



- ‘What are you doing tomorrow?’ ‘I’m staying at home and studying.’

- come and go

*My brother is coming to stay.*

*I’m going to Prague tomorrow.*

- going to or present continuous?

*I’m having a party.*

More usual

*I’m going to have a party.*

Possible

*Jean is going to get her hair cut.*

Plan/Intention

(She doesn’t know when exactly.)

*Jean is getting her hair cut next week.*

Fixed arrangement

(She has an appointment at the hairdresser’s.)

**1**

Look at the diary.  
Make a sentence  
for each day using  
the verb in  
brackets.



- a) (see) *...I'm seeing the dentist at 4.30 on Monday.*.....
- b) (stay) .....
- c) (play) .....
- d) (do) .....
- e) (go) .....
- f) (have) .....
- g) (come) .....

**2**

Put the verbs in  
brackets into  
the present  
continuous.

- a) What (you do) ..... *are you doing* ..... this evening?
- b) I (not come) ..... to school tomorrow.
- c) Tina (go) ..... to Italy next week.
- d) (you have) ..... a party this week?
- e) We (not go) ..... home on the bus after school.
- f) (Mrs Simpson teach) ..... us this afternoon?
- g) Catherine and George (not arrive) ..... tomorrow.
- h) (Joaquim go) ..... to the football match tomorrow?
- i) Ann (not work) ..... on Friday.
- j) (you leave) ..... this afternoon?

**3**

Complete each  
sentence or  
question in  
the present  
continuous. Use a  
verb from the box.

come cook do get go have leave meet stay work

- a) I've enjoyed my holiday here, but I'm *going* ..... home tomorrow.
- b) Mark ..... a party on his birthday.
- c) Some friends ..... to stay with me next week.
- d) ..... anything tonight? Would you like to come to the cinema?
- e) What time ..... in the morning? Do want me to take you to the airport?
- f) Don't forget. You ..... dinner this evening. It's your turn!
- g) I can't see you at 4.30. I ..... some friends at that time.
- h) Tania and Alex ..... married in June.
- i) ..... tomorrow, or have you got a free day?
- j) I haven't got any lessons tomorrow, so I ..... at home.



# Unit 27

**tomorrow, next week,  
soon, later, after,  
in a moment, at 6.00,  
I'll do it, I'm going to do it, I'm doing it**

Future time words  
More contrasts

Here are some examples of time words we use when we are talking about the future:

- tomorrow  
*I'm leaving for France tomorrow.*
- next week  
*I'll see you at the meeting next week.*
- soon  
*Goodbye! I'll see you soon.*
- later, after  
*I'll phone you later.* (no object)  
*I'll phone you after the film.* (object)
- in a moment, etc.  
*I'll be back in a moment.*  
*I'll see you in two weeks.*
- at  
*I'll be back at 6.00.*

## More contrasts

<i>In the year 2100, people will live on the moon.</i>	Prediction
<i>Our school trip starts tomorrow. We're leaving at six.</i>	Fixed arrangement
<i>I've forgotten my keys and we can't get in the house. What are we going to do now?</i>	Plan/Intention

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Match the questions a) to f) with the replies 1) to 6).

- a) Are you free tomorrow night? ..3.  
b) What are your plans for the holidays? .....  
c) What are the arrangements for the school trip tomorrow? .....  
d) Where are you going? I want to talk to you. ....  
e) Are you going to be here on Thursday? .....  
f) Does your leg still hurt? .....
- 1) Yes, I'm going to the doctor's tomorrow.  
2) No, I'm leaving on Wednesday afternoon.  
3) Sorry, I'm going to the cinema with Peter.  
4) I'll be back in a moment.  
5) I'm going to have a good rest!  
6) We're meeting outside the front entrance at 8.30.

**2**

Underline the possible answers 1), 2) or 3). More than one answer may be possible.

- a) Are you busy on Saturday evening?  
1) I'm going to the cinema.    2) I'll go to the cinema.  
3) I'm going to go to the cinema.
- b) I need some help with the shopping.  
1) All right, I'm helping you.    2) All right, I'll help you.  
3) All right, I'm going to help you.
- c) We've got some great news for you!  
1) We're getting married.    2) We're going to get married.  
3) We'll get married.
- d) Don't worry about the exam.  
1) I'm sure you're passing.    2) I'm sure you're going to pass.  
3) I'm sure you'll pass.
- e) Pat has bought her ticket.  
1) She's leaving on Tuesday.    2) She's going to leave on Tuesday.  
3) She'll leave on Tuesday.
- f) I have to leave early this afternoon.  
1) I'm going to the dentist's.    2) I'm going to go to the dentist's.  
3) I'll go to the dentist's.

**3**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) What are you doing tomorrow evening/last evening?  
b) Kate is going to start learning French next year/last year.  
c) Thomas is leaving in/to the morning.  
d) Rita will be back after/later.  
e) The new school will open at/in 2008.  
f) I'm just going to the library. I'll see you a minute/later.  
g) Jorge won't be long. He'll be back after/in an hour.  
h) Jane is having a party in/on Friday.

# Unit 28 Consolidation 4

## 1

Choose the best phrase.

- a) 'Do you have any plans for your birthday?' 'Yes, .. a party.'  
1) I'll have    2) I'm having
- b) 'I need some help with the shopping tomorrow.' 'Don't worry, ..''  
1) I'll help.    2) I'm helping.
- c) What ..... when you grow up and leave school?  
1) will you do    2) are you going to do
- d) 'Do you want to come to a football match on Saturday?' 'Which teams ..''  
1) are playing    2) are going to play
- e) Don't carry all those heavy books. Some of the children ..... you.  
1) will help    2) are going to help
- f) The doctor is on his way. He ..... in fifteen minutes.  
1) will be here    2) is being
- g) Good news. Ann ..... a baby.  
1) will have    2) is going to have
- h) I'm sorry I can't come to the lesson tomorrow. .... my grandmother in hospital.  
1) I'll visit    2) I'm visiting

## 2

Complete each sentence with the continuous form of the verb in brackets. Then tick the sentences which refer to the future.

- a) Next summer Kate (spend) ..... *is spending* ..... a month in France. ✓
- b) Hurry up, Mehmet. Everyone (wait) ..... for you.
- c) (you do) ..... anything on Friday? Do you want to come to a party?
- d) Helen (read) ..... in bed at the moment.
- e) We (go) ..... to the cinema this evening.
- f) I can't answer the phone. I (have) ..... a bath.
- g) What (you do) ..... later? Do you want to come for a walk?
- h) David (leave) ..... tomorrow. Have you said goodbye to him?

## 3

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) We'll go to the cinema this evening. Do you want to come?  
*...We're going to the cinema this evening. Do you want to come?.....*
- b) Look out! That car will crash!  
.....
- c) Bye for now! I'm going to see you tomorrow.  
.....
- d) Sorry I can't meet you. I will go to the doctor's.  
.....
- e) Have you heard the weather forecast? It's raining tomorrow.  
.....
- f) I've bought my ticket. I'll leave tomorrow.  
.....

Elementary Language Practice

**4**

Decide which answer, a), b), c) or d), best fits the space.

What are you going to (1) ..... when you leave school?

Paul: 'I'm going to (2) ..... to university, I hope! I'll (3) ..... to pass my exams, and I expect I'll (4) ..... about my future with my parents. One day I'll (5) ..... a doctor.'

Sheila: 'I expect I'll (6) ..... a job as a journalist. It'll probably (7) ..... difficult at first, but my mother is a journalist, and she'll (8) ..... me. We have a school magazine, and next term I'm going to (9) ..... some articles for it, so I'll (10) ..... something about the job.'

- |               |             |           |           |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1) a) make    | b) have     | c) do     | d) get    |
| 2) a) study   | b) work     | c) pass   | d) go     |
| 3) a) try     | b) want     | c) decide | d) listen |
| 4) a) discuss | b) talk     | c) study  | d) work   |
| 5) a) make    | b) do       | c) work   | d) be     |
| 6) a) get     | b) work     | c) be     | d) like   |
| 7) a) find    | b) begin    | c) be     | d) come   |
| 8) a) write   | b) discuss  | c) help   | d) work   |
| 9) a) write   | b) have     | c) get    | d) employ |
| 10) a) take   | b) interest | c) see    | d) know   |

**5**

Complete each sentence with a word from the box. More than one answer may be possible.

at in later next on this tomorrow tonight

- a) I'll be late ..... tonight ....., but I'll be home before midnight.
- b) Can you wait, please? I'll be ready ..... a minute.
- c) Don't worry, I'll be here ..... 7.00.
- d) I've finished now. I'll be back ..... afternoon.
- e) It's cold today, but it'll be warmer .....
- f) Bye for now. I'll see you .....
- g) There won't be any lessons ..... Monday.
- h) I think it will be a hot summer ..... year.

**6**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Tina will definitely be here at/on 6.00.
- b) Our new sports centre will be ready next year/the next year.
- c) Hurry up! The bus will be here later/soon.
- d) I'll see you after/later the lesson.
- e) Are you doing anything at night/tonight?
- f) I won't be long. I'll be ready after/in a minute.
- g) Everything will be different at/in the year 3500!
- h) I'm leaving now, but I'll be back after/later.

Think about grammar!

- 1 Does your language have one or more ways of describing the future?
- 2 Revise the difference between *will*, *going to* and the present continuous. Remember that in some contexts, the difference may be very small.

# Unit 29

*If I have a cold, I stay at home.* Conditional 1

*If you feel tired, have a rest.*

*If you ask him, he'll help you.*

## if sentences

Some *if* sentences describe what always happens in some situations, or tell people what to do in a situation.

- Things that usually or always happen.  
In this type of sentence we use the present simple in both clauses.

*if* + present simple + present simple

*If I have a cold, I (usually/always) stay at home.*

*When I have a cold, I stay at home.*

- Instructions in situations.  
In this type of sentence we use the present simple after *if*..., and an imperative in the other clause.

*if* + present simple + imperative

*If you feel tired, have a rest.*

- See Unit 67 Imperatives.

## Conditional 1: real situations

Conditional sentences describe possible situations and their possible results. In 'real situations' we are certain that something will happen if someone does something. We call these 'real situations' in contrast to 'imaginary situations' (see Unit 30).

We use the present simple after *if*..., and *will* in the other clause.

*If* + present simple + *will*

*If you ask him, he'll help you.* (I'm certain about this.)

## Negative + positive

*If we don't catch the bus, we'll be late.* (I'm certain about this.)  
(-) (+)

## Positive + negative

*If we catch the bus, we won't be late.* (I'm certain about this.)  
(+) (-)

Elementary Language Practice

**Negative + negative**

*If we don't miss the bus, we won't be late.* (I'm certain about this.)  
(-) (-)

**Examples of Conditional 1**

You are at home. It's time to go to school. Your mother says:  
*If you leave now, you'll catch the bus.*  
*If you don't leave now, you'll miss the bus.*  
*If you miss the bus, your teacher will be angry.*

**Warnings**

*If you ride your bike like that, you'll fall off!*  
*If you touch that, you'll burn yourself!*

**Reversing the clauses**

The clauses in *if* sentences and conditional sentences can be reversed. Note the use of commas.

*If you miss the bus, your teacher will be angry.* (comma used)  
*Your teacher will be angry if you miss the bus.* (no comma)

- See Unit 30 Conditional 2.

**1**

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or use *will*.

- If Jack (not leave) ...*doesn't leave*... now, he (miss) .....*will miss*..... his bus.
- If Helen (work) ..... hard, she (pass) ..... her exams.
- If it (rain) ....., we (go) ..... into a shop.
- If Mary (not practise) ..... her French, she (not improve) .....
- If you (not send) ..... any invitations, nobody (come) ..... to the party.
- If it (rain) ..... tomorrow, we (not go) ..... swimming.
- If George (come) ..... late, the teacher (be) ..... angry.
- If you (lend) ..... me your dictionary, I (look up) ..... the word.
- If I (see) ..... Joe tomorrow, I (tell) ..... him you want to see him.
- If Tina (go) ..... to bed early, she (not feel) ..... tired in the morning.

**2**

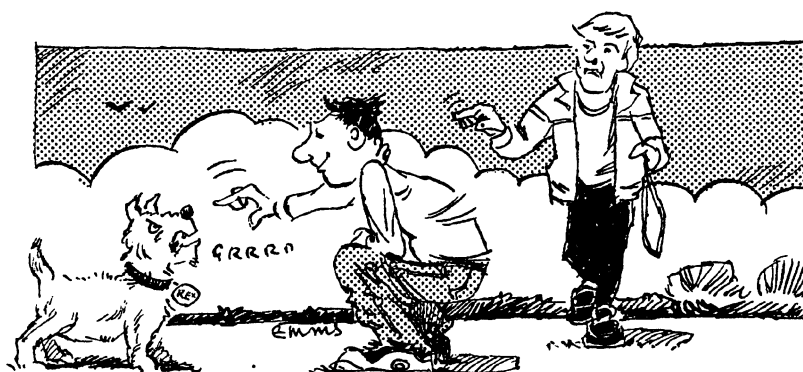
Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) If you press/will press that button, a bell rings.
- b) If you wear your coat tomorrow, you aren't/won't be cold.
- c) If I feel/will feel tired, I go to bed early.
- d) If you will come/come back next week, David will be here.
- e) If it rains/will rain tomorrow, we'll stay at home.
- f) If I go to university when I am older, I'll work/work very hard.
- g) If our teacher is/will be ill, we don't have a lesson.
- h) If we leave/will leave early in the morning, we'll be on time.
- i) If you go camping in the summer, I come/'ll come with you.
- j) If we don't hurry/won't hurry, they'll sell all the tickets.

**3**

Read the situations, then complete each sentence.

- a) A friend wants you to play basketball in the classroom. You are worried about breaking the window. You say:  
If we ...*play basketball in the classroom, we'll break the window*.....
- b) You want to leave the party now, because you are worried about missing the last bus. You say:  
If we .....



- c) Your dog bites people. A friend wants to touch the dog, so you say:  
If you .....
- d) It's raining. You want to stand under a tree, because you are worried about getting wet. You say:  
If we .....
- e) You want to take the bus to the city centre. Your friend wants to walk. You are worried about getting tired. You say:  
If we .....
- f) You are walking to school with a friend. You don't want to be late. You suggest hurrying. You say:  
If we don't .....

# Unit 30

*If I knew, I'd tell you.*

Conditional 2

*If I were a rock star, I'd live in New York.*

## Conditional 2: imaginary conditions

Conditional sentences describe possible situations and their possible results. In 'imaginary situations' we imagine that something would happen if someone did something.

In this type of sentence, we use the past simple after *if...*, and *would/wouldn't* in the other clause.

<i>if</i> + past simple + <i>would</i> + verb
---

*If I knew the answer, I would tell you.*

In this situation, I do not know the answer.

Note: the past simple here does not describe past time.

## Examples of Conditional 2

*If I had a helicopter, I'd fly to school.*

*If I landed my helicopter at school, my teacher wouldn't like it!*

*If I were ...*

(in written/formal English)

*If I were a rock star, I'd live in New York.*

*If I were the head teacher, I'd give the class a holiday!*

*If I was...*

(possible in everyday speech)

*If I was a rock star, I'd live in New York.*

*If I was rich, I'd buy you a drink!*

## Giving advice

*If I were you, ...*

*I've got a terrible headache!*

*If I were you, I'd take an aspirin.*

*I feel really tired.*

*If I were you, I wouldn't go to bed late!*

## Pronunciation: stress

*If I were you ...*

- For Conditional 3, which describes past events, see *Intermediate Language Practice Unit 13*.



**1**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or use *would*.

- a) If I (have) .....*had*..... the time, I (go) ..*would go*... to the cinema more often.
- b) If there (not be) ..... any traffic, our city (be) ..... a much better place.
- c) If I (find) ..... some money, I (take) ..... it to the police station.
- d) If the world (run out) ..... of water, we (be) ..... very thirsty.
- e) If I (own) ..... a dog, I (take) ..... it for a walk every day.
- f) If I (meet) ..... an alien, I (try) ..... to make friends with it.
- g) If everyone (speak) ..... Spanish, nobody (learn) ..... English!
- h) If computers (rule) ..... the world, I think the world (be) ..... a terrible place to live in.
- i) If I (see) ..... a snake, I (run) ..... away.
- j) If I (be) ..... the president of my country, I (help) ..... everyone.

**2**

Complete each sentence with a verb from the box. More than one answer may be possible.

had lived met robbed saw slept were won  
 would ask would be would buy would call  
 would catch would fly would go would visit

- a) If I .....*met*..... a famous person, I ..*would ask*... them some questions.
- b) If I ..... an accident, I ..... an ambulance and the police.
- c) If I ..... a helicopter, I ..... to school.
- d) If I ..... a bank, the police ..... me.
- e) If I ..... a lot of money, I ..... presents for my family.
- f) If I ..... on a desert island, I ..... fishing every day.
- g) If I ..... in the classroom, my teacher ..... very angry!
- h) If I ..... an astronaut, I ..... other planets.

**3**

Read the situations, then complete the advice.

- a) Your friend has bad toothache.  
If ...*I were you, I would go to the*..... dentist's.
- b) Your friend can't decide whether to go to the cinema, or stay at home.  
If ..... cinema.
- c) Your friend wants to buy a new bike, but hasn't got any money.  
If ..... my parents.
- d) Your friend is having problems studying.  
If ..... teacher.
- e) Your friend always feels tired in class, and sometimes falls asleep!  
If ..... bed early.
- f) Your friend is thinking of starting to smoke cigarettes.  
If ..... because it's bad for your health.
- g) Your friend wants to take more exercise and be fit.  
If ..... a sports club.
- h) Your friend has found a wallet with a lot of money in it.  
If ..... the police.

# Unit 31

***If you fall, you'll hurt yourself.***  
***If you fell, you'd hurt yourself.***

Conditionals 1 and 2

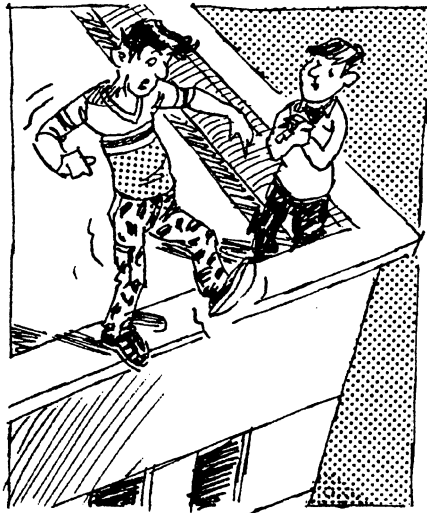
## Situation 1

Conditional 1

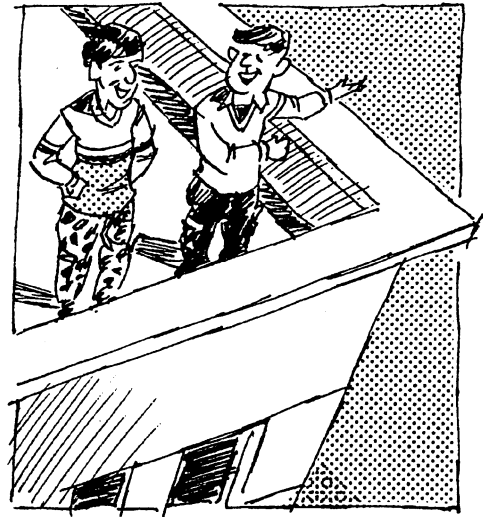
We are on the roof of a block of flats. You are standing very near the edge.

This is dangerous! I say:

*If you fall, you'll hurt yourself.*



Conditional 1



Conditional 2

Conditional 2

We are on the roof of a block of flats. You are not near the edge. There is no danger. I imagine a dangerous situation and say:

*If you fell, you'd hurt yourself!*

## Situation 2

Conditional 1

It is a cold day in winter. We are going to leave the house. I have got a coat for you. I say:

*If you wear this coat, you won't be cold.*

Conditional 2

It is a cold day in winter. We are outside. I am wearing a coat. I am warm. You are not wearing a coat. You are cold. I say:

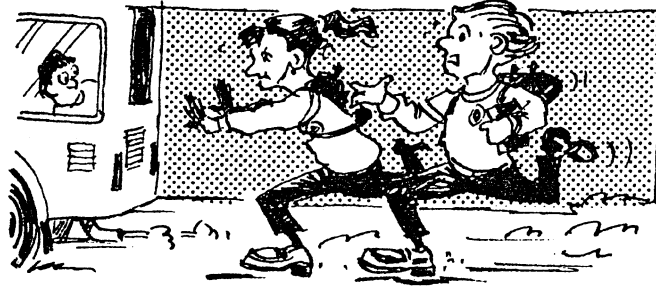
*If you wore a coat, you wouldn't be cold!*

You say:

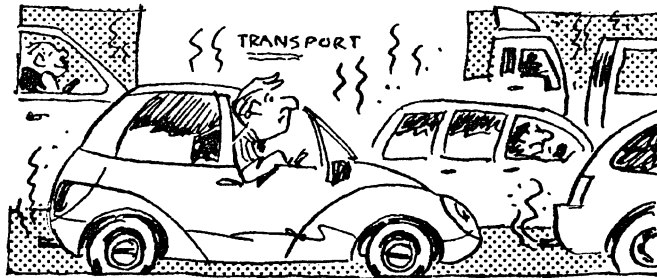
*If I had some money, I'd buy a coat!*

1

Tick the best sentence for each picture.



- a) 1) If we miss the bus we'll be late for school. ✓
- 2) If we missed the bus, we would be late for school.



- b) 1) If I have a helicopter, I'll fly to work.
- 2) If I had a helicopter, I'd fly to work.



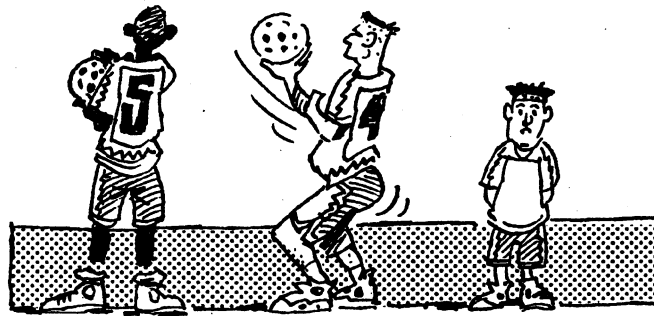
- c) 1) If we live at the North Pole, we'll feel cool.
- 2) If we lived at the North Pole, we'd feel cool.



- d) 1) If you drop that, it'll break!
- 2) If you dropped that, it would break.



- e) 1) If he eats all those pizzas, he'll win a prize.  
 2) If he ate all those pizzas, he'd win a prize.



- f) 1) If I'm taller, I'll be in the team.  
 2) If I were taller, I'd be in the team.

**2**

Complete each sentence in either Conditional 1 or Conditional 2.

- a) Sue doesn't ride a bike to school, because she doesn't have one.  
 If Sue ...*had a bike, she would ride it to school*.....
- b) Chris will pass his exams, but he has to work hard.  
 If Chris ...*works hard, he'll pass his exams*.....
- c) John isn't fat, because he doesn't eat a lot.  
 If John .....
- d) Ellen doesn't have a car, so she walks to work.  
 If Ellen .....
- e) Ali's English will improve, but he has to practise.  
 If Ali .....
- f) Pat won't be late but she has to hurry.  
 If Pat .....
- g) Rita doesn't like swimming so she doesn't go to the beach.  
 If Rita .....
- h) Paulo will get better, but he has to take his medicine.  
 If Paulo .....
- i) David doesn't get up early because he lives near the school.  
 If David .....
- j) Carol will catch the bus but she has to leave now.  
 If Carol .....

# Unit 32

**Do you like swimming?** Short answers  
**Yes, I do.**

**yes/no questions**

Present simple	<i>Do you like swimming?</i>
Present continuous	<i>Are you reading this?</i>
Present perfect	<i>Have you ever been to Italy?</i>
Past simple	<i>Did you post my letter?</i>
Past continuous	<i>Were you working?</i>

**Short answers**

<i>Do you like swimming?</i>	<i>Yes, I do.</i>	<i>No, I don't.</i>
<i>Are you reading this?</i>	<i>Yes, I am.</i>	<i>No, I'm not.</i>
<i>Have you ever been to Italy?</i>	<i>Yes, I have.</i>	<i>No, I haven't.</i>
<i>Did you post my letter?</i>	<i>Yes, I did.</i>	<i>No, I didn't.</i>
<i>Were you working?</i>	<i>Yes, I was.</i>	<i>No, I wasn't.</i>

**Examples**

<i>Does Jim like swimming?</i>	<i>Yes, he does.</i>
<i>Is Maria reading this?</i>	<i>Yes, she is.</i>
<i>Can you swim?</i>	<i>No, I can't.</i>
<i>Has Murat ever been to Italy?</i>	<i>Yes, he has.</i>
<i>Did Tony post my letter?</i>	<i>Yes, he did.</i>
<i>Was Alice working?</i>	<i>Yes, she was.</i>
<i>Would you like tea?</i>	<i>No, I wouldn't.</i>
<i>Are they waiting?</i>	<i>No, they aren't.</i>



*'Is Luca waiting for a taxi?'*  
*'Yes, he is.'*

*Elementary Language Practice*

**1**

Use the words to make questions in the tenses shown in brackets.

- a) they/work hard (past continuous)  
*...Were they working hard.....?*
- b) Jim/eat yet (present perfect)  
 .....
- c) you/read a lot (present simple)  
 .....
- d) Tom/writing a letter (present continuous)  
 .....
- e) Tina/leave yesterday (past simple)  
 .....
- f) we/meet before (present perfect)  
 .....
- g) Sam/watch TV (past continuous)  
 .....
- h) Ann/like swimming (present simple)  
 .....
- i) I/disturb you (present continuous)  
 .....
- j) you/find your books (past simple)  
 .....

**2**

Match the questions a) to j) with the answers 1) to 10).

- |                               |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| a) Was Ann driving?           | 1) Yes, I do.      |
| b) Did you see Tom yesterday? | 2) No, he isn't.   |
| c) Do you know the answer?    | 3) No, I haven't.  |
| d) Have you seen this film?   | 4) Yes, I was.     |
| e) Are you reading this?      | 5) Yes, she does.  |
| f) Were you sitting here?     | 6) No, she wasn't. |
| g) Is George leaving?         | 7) No, she hasn't. |
| h) Has Helen finished yet?    | 8) Yes, he did.    |
| i) Does Pam live here?        | 9) Yes, I did.     |
| j) Did Jack phone?            | 10) No, I'm not.   |

**3**

Write a short answer for each question.

- a) Have you seen my wallet? No, *...I haven't.....*
- b) Is David studying French? Yes, .....
- c) Did it rain yesterday? No, .....
- d) Do you like Indian food? Yes, .....
- e) Have you ever been to Prague? Yes, .....
- f) Were you carrying anything? Yes, .....
- g) Are you having a good time? No, .....
- h) Did you find your bag? Yes, .....
- i) Does Mary work here? No, .....
- j) Was Tom bothering you? No, .....

# Unit 33

**When do you usually get up?**  
**What eats fish?**

Wh- questions  
 Subject and object questions

## Wh- questions

We use:

<i>who</i> with people	Who is that? It's Jack.
<i>what</i> with things	What are you looking for? A pen.
<i>when</i> with time	When are you leaving? At 6.00.
<i>where</i> with places	Where do you live? In that house.

Present simple	<i>When do you usually get up?</i>
Present continuous	<i>What are you doing?</i>
Present perfect	<i>Why have you stopped?</i>
Past simple	<i>How did you feel?</i>
Past continuous	<i>Where were you going?</i>

## Short answers

<i>When do you usually get up?</i>	<i>At 7.30.</i>
<i>What are you doing?</i>	<i>Writing a letter.</i>
<i>Why have you come?</i>	<i>To give you a present.</i>
<i>How did you feel?</i>	<i>Terrible.</i>
<i>Where were you going?</i>	<i>Home.</i>

## Subject and Object questions

We use *What* and *Who* to ask questions about the subject or the object. Questions about the subject do not use the auxiliary *do* (*does, did*).

Subject	Object	
<i>Cats eat fish.</i>	<i>Cats eat fish.</i>	Object question
<i>What do cats eat?</i>	<i>Cats eat fish.</i>	Subject question

## Examples

- Subject questions  
*What makes people happy?*     *Love makes people happy!*  
*Who sits in this seat?*     *Helen sits in this seat.*
- Object questions.  
*What do you wear in winter?*     *I wear an overcoat.*  
*What are you reading?*     *I'm reading Oliver Twist.*

## Examples of subject questions with short answers

<i>Who gets up early?</i>	<i>Jim does.</i>
<i>Who lives here?</i>	<i>I do.</i>
<i>What makes you laugh?</i>	<i>Cartoon films.</i>
<i>What helps you study?</i>	<i>Classical music.</i>

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Use the words to make a question in the tense given.

- a) Why/you cry? (present continuous)  
*Why are you crying?*.....?
- b) How/you get here (past simple)  
 .....?
- c) What/Jack usually do/on Saturdays (present simple)  
 .....?
- d) How long/you live here (present perfect)  
 .....?
- e) Where/David/go (past continuous)  
 .....?
- f) Who/you talk to (present continuous)  
 .....?
- g) What/you do (past continuous)  
 .....?
- h) When/you usually/get up (present simple)  
 .....?
- i) What/Martin/do (present perfect)  
 .....?
- j) What/Jim and Ann/buy (past simple)  
 .....?

**2**

Complete each question.

- a) 'What ..... *makes you tired* .....?' 'Running makes me tired.'
- b) 'Who .....?' 'I talked to the manager.'
- c) 'What .....?' 'I read a newspaper.'
- d) 'Who .....?' 'Kate brought the ice-cream.'
- e) 'What .....?' 'Joe decided to take the job.'
- f) 'Who .....?' 'I answer most of the questions.'
- g) 'Which .....?' 'This house is mine.'
- h) 'Who .....?' 'Pat looks after the children.'
- i) 'What .....?' 'Helen studies chemistry.'
- j) 'Who .....?' 'Rob helps me with my homework.'

**3**

Make short answers from the answers in brackets.

- a) 'What are you eating?' (I'm eating a sandwich.) *..A sandwich.....*
- b) 'Who helps you?' (My teacher helps me.) .....
- c) 'What do you watch?' (I watch cartoons.) .....
- d) 'Who do you write to?' (I write to my penfriend.) .....
- e) 'What makes you laugh?' (You make me laugh!) .....
- f) 'Who loves you?' (Somebody loves me!) .....
- g) 'What comes next?' (The news comes next.) .....
- h) 'Who writes to you?' (My cousin writes to me.) .....
- i) 'Who do you sit next to?' (I sit next to Pat.) .....
- j) 'What do you like?' (I like tennis.) .....



# Unit 34

## You're John, aren't you? Tag questions

We can put tag questions at the end of statements and make the statements questions.

statement	<i>You like chips.</i>
with a tag question	<i>You like chips, don't you?</i>
<b>Examples</b>	
Present simple	<i>You like chips, don't you?</i> <i>You don't like chips, do you?</i>
Present continuous	<i>We're arriving soon, aren't we?</i> <i>We aren't leaving, are we?</i>
Present perfect	<i>She's finished, hasn't she?</i> <i>She hasn't arrived yet, has she?</i>
Past simple	<i>You bought some milk, didn't you?</i> <i>You didn't buy any bread, did you?</i>
Past continuous	<i>Tina was running quickly, wasn't she?</i> <i>Tina wasn't wearing running shoes, was she?</i>
<i>will</i>	<i>You won't be late, will you?</i> <i>You'll be careful, won't you?</i>
<i>going to</i>	<i>You're going to have a party, aren't you?</i> <i>We aren't going to be late, are we?</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>Tom is good fun, isn't he?</i> <i>You weren't late, were you?</i>
<i>have got</i>	<i>You've got a brother, haven't you?</i> <i>You haven't got a sister, have you?</i>

### Intonation and meaning

- Positive questions

*You like swimming, don't you?* (I'm not sure, so tell me if I'm right.)

*You like swimming, don't you?* (I'm sure that you do, but I'm checking.)

- Negative questions

*You don't like swimming, do you?* (I'm surprised that you do.)

*You don't like swimming, do you?* (I'm sure that you don't, but I'm checking).

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Jim got lost, did he/didn't he?
- b) You don't know the answer, do you/don't you?
- c) The children were making a lot of noise, wasn't it/weren't they?
- d) Harry doesn't feel well, isn't it/does he?
- e) George didn't complain, did he/didn't he?
- f) Something has gone wrong, has it/hasn't it?
- g) You aren't sitting here, isn't it/are you?
- h) You will read this, will you/won't you?
- i) Paul likes Jill, isn't it/doesn't he?
- j) You're waiting for Sue, isn't it/aren't you?

**2**

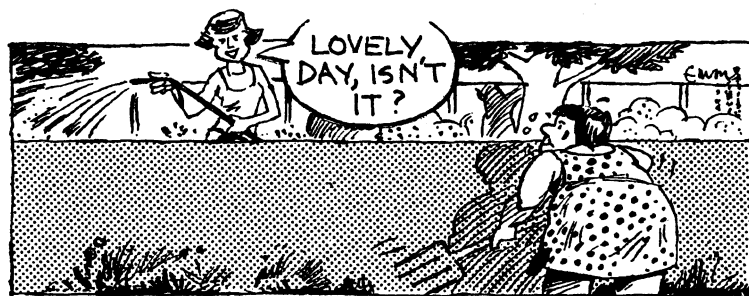
Match each sentence a) to j) with a tag question 1) to 10).

- |                                      |                 |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| a) Ann catches the bus,              | 1) wasn't she?  |
| b) Jan is leaving in the morning,    | 2) is she?      |
| c) Sally won't be back,              | 3) didn't she?  |
| d) Helen has left,                   | 4) doesn't she? |
| e) Kate finished the book,           | 5) will she?    |
| f) Sue hasn't got a bike,            | 6) did she?     |
| g) Tina isn't a French teacher,      | 7) does she?    |
| h) Paula didn't say a lot,           | 8) hasn't she?  |
| i) Mary was sitting next to you,     | 9) has she?     |
| j) Pam doesn't like classical music, | 10) isn't she?  |

**3**

Add a tag question to each sentence.

- a) Harry has been helping you, ..... *hasn't he*.....?
- b) You don't eat meat, .....?
- c) Paul was sleeping, .....?
- d) I missed a good film, .....?
- e) Jane is leaving in the morning, .....?
- f) We are going to win, .....?
- g) Jack hasn't done his homework, .....?
- h) You weren't having dinner, .....?
- i) David and Kate aren't coming to the party, .....?
- j) Sue didn't leave early, .....?



## Unit 35 Consolidation 5

### 1

Complete these conditional sentences. Use *will* or *would* and the present simple or past simple.

- Look at that sky! It's going to rain. If I (get) ..... *get* ..... wet, I'm sure I (catch) ... *will catch* ... a cold.
- Well, I'm not your teacher so I don't know the answer. But if I (be) ..... your teacher, I (tell) ..... you to look in your dictionary!
- I often imagine being on a desert island. If I (live) ..... on a small island in the Pacific, I (spend) ..... all day fishing and sunbathing!
- Yes, I often see Helen. If I (see) ..... her tomorrow, I (tell) ..... her to call you.
- Come on, hurry up. If we (hurry) ....., we (get) ..... to the cinema before the beginning of the film.
- Sorry, but I haven't got a pencil sharpener. If I (have) ..... one, I (lend) ..... it to you, but I haven't got one!
- I can go to the supermarket on my way home from school. If you (give) ..... me the money, I (buy) ..... the things you want.
- Sometimes I dream that I win a lot of money and become rich! If I (be) ..... rich, I (give) ..... presents to all my friends!
- Let's go to the stadium now. If we (not get) ..... there before 7.00, there (not be) ..... any tickets left for the rock concert.
- I don't believe in aliens. Anyway, if aliens (land) ..... on Earth, I think they (soon decide) ..... to go back to where they came from!

### 2

Complete each sentence or question so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- I advise you to go to the doctor's.  
If ... *I were you, I would go to the doctor's* .....
- I'm sure your name isn't Jim.  
Your ..... it?
- I think you've forgotten your homework!  
You ..... you!
- If you don't hurry, we'll be late.  
..... won't .....
- I hope our team isn't going to lose.  
Our team ..... it?
- Why don't you go to bed early?  
If .....
- I'm sure you weren't at school yesterday.  
You ..... you?
- You feel hungry because you don't eat breakfast.  
..... wouldn't .....

Elementary Language Practice

**3**

Complete the questions.

- a) Who ..... *do* ..... you ..... *sit next to* ..... in class?  
I sit next to Jim.
- b) ..... to India?  
No, I haven't. I've never been to India.
- c) What ..... ?  
Tomorrow? I'm going to have a rest, I think!
- d) What ..... ?  
Being with my friends makes me happy.
- e) Why ..... ?  
I'm not looking at you, actually!
- f) When ..... ?  
I usually leave home at about 7.30.
- g) ..... swimming?  
Yes, I do. I like swimming very much.
- h) Who ..... there?  
In that house? Mark lives there, I think.

**4**

Add a tag question to each sentence.

- a) You like ice-cream, ..... *don't you* ..... ?
- b) Your name's Ewa, ..... ?
- c) We're not late, ..... ?
- d) You're waiting for Jack, ..... ?
- e) Roberto hasn't got a brother, ..... ?
- f) They'll be here soon, ..... ?
- g) You weren't writing, ..... ?
- h) Gina doesn't come from Spain, ..... ?

**5**

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) What you are doing this evening? ..... *are you* .....
- b) Who does live here? .....
- c) If I am rich, I am buying a big car! .....
- d) You haven't got a pen, got you? .....
- e) What means this? .....
- f) You're Helen, isn't it? .....
- g) How much this costs? .....
- h) If I am you, I won't sit in the sun. ....

Think about grammar!

- 1 How do conditional sentences work in your language? What mistakes do you usually make in English with these sentences?
- 2 Which question types do you often get wrong?
- 3 Revise the different types of tag questions. Do you have this kind of question in your language?

# Unit 36

**Can you swim? I can't swim.** Modals of ability and possibility  
**Will you be able to come?**

**can**

Statements	Negatives	Questions
<i>I can swim.</i>	<i>I can't swim.</i>	<i>Can I swim?</i>
<i>You can swim.</i>	<i>You can't swim.</i>	<i>Can you swim?</i>
<i>He can swim.</i>	<i>He can't swim.</i>	<i>Can he swim?</i>
<i>She can swim.</i>	<i>She can't swim.</i>	<i>Can she swim?</i>
<i>It can swim.</i>	<i>It can't swim.</i>	<i>Can it swim?</i>
<i>We can swim.</i>	<i>We can't swim.</i>	<i>Can we swim?</i>
<i>They can swim.</i>	<i>They can't swim.</i>	<i>Can they swim?</i>

**cannot**

*I cannot swim.* In writing and formal speech.

**Short answers**

*Can you see it?* Yes, *I can.*  
 No, *I can't.*

**Tag questions**

*You can see it, can't you?*  
*You can't see it, can you?*

**Examples**

*Can you ride a bike?*  
*Sorry, but I can't come to your party on Friday.*  
*I can't lift this table.*



**able to**

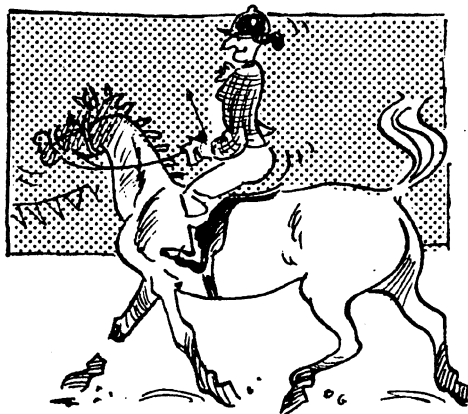
We use *able to* in place of *can*. *Able to* is only used about people, not things.  
*I can play football.* *I'm able to play football.*

*Will you be able to help me move this table tomorrow?*

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Look at each picture and make sentences with *can* or *can't*.



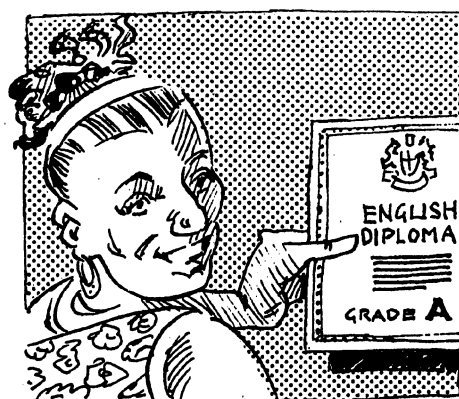
a) (I, ride)  
*I can ride a horse.*.....



d) (she, hear)  
.....



b) (he, swim)  
.....



e) (she, speak)  
.....



c) (he, drive)  
.....



f) (he, walk)  
.....

**2**

Make questions then ask a partner. Write your partner's answers.

- a) play chess ..... *Can you play chess?* ..... ?  
 ..... *Yes, I can / No, I can't.* .....
- b) play tennis ..... ?  
 .....
- c) use a computer ..... ?  
 .....
- d) cook ..... ?  
 .....
- e) play the piano ..... ?  
 .....
- f) run fast ..... ?  
 .....
- g) ride a bike ..... ?  
 .....
- h) speak French ..... ?  
 .....

**3**

Write new sentences and questions with *can* or *can't*.

- a) I'm not able to come to your party.  
 ..... *I can't come to your party.* .....
- b) Is it possible for you to play basketball tonight?  
 .....
- c) Do you know how to use a computer?  
 .....
- d) It isn't possible for you to borrow my bike.  
 .....
- e) It's impossible for us to answer this question.  
 .....
- f) It's not possible for me to help you.  
 .....
- g) I don't know how to play this game.  
 .....
- h) Is it possible for you to help me?  
 .....

**4**

Write about what you can and can't do.

*I can speak English but I can't.* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Unit 37

**You have to stop!**  
**You must leave now!**  
**You should get up early.**

Modals of obligation

## must

Situations for *must*

We usually use *must* when we talk about necessary or important actions.

*I must leave now. I don't want to be late.*  
*We must remember to take our passports.*

<i>I must leave.</i>	<i>We must leave.</i>
<i>You must leave.</i>	<i>They must leave.</i>
<i>He must leave.</i>	<i>It must leave.</i>
<i>She must leave.</i>	



We can also use *have to* in these situations.

## have to

Situations for *have to*

We use *have to* when we talk about a rule made for us by somebody else.

*We have to wear a uniform at my school.* (a rule)  
*When the lights are red, you have to stop.* (a rule)

<i>I have to leave.</i>	<i>Do I have to leave?</i>
<i>You have to leave.</i>	<i>Do you have to leave?</i>
<i>He has to leave.</i>	<i>Does he have to leave?</i>
<i>She has to leave.</i>	<i>Does she have to leave?</i>
<i>It has to leave.</i>	<i>Does it have to leave?</i>
<i>We have to leave.</i>	<i>Do we have to leave?</i>
<i>They have to leave.</i>	<i>Do they have to leave?</i>

We don't usually use *must* in these situations.

*I must leave at 6.00.*      *Do I have to leave at 6.00?*  
*I have to leave at 6.00.*      *Do I have to leave at 6.00?*

## should

Situations for *should*

*Should* gives the speaker's opinion of what is a good thing to do.

*You should check your work at the end of the lesson.* (This means: It's a good idea for you to do this.)  
*You should eat fruit every day.*



1

Rewrite each imperative with *must*.

- a) Do it again! *You must do it again!*.....
- b) Work faster! .....
- c) Turn to page 50! .....
- d) Hurry up! .....
- e) Stop talking! .....
- f) Listen to me! .....
- g) Give me your homework! .....
- h) Sit down! .....

2

Make questions then ask a partner. Write your partner's answers.

- Life at School
- a) wear a uniform *Do you have to wear a uniform?*.....? *Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*.....
  - b) do homework .....
  - c) sit in the same place .....
  - d) arrive before 8.00 .....
  - e) eat lunch at school .....
  - f) change classrooms .....
  - g) do gym .....
  - h) learn German .....

3

Complete each sentence with *should*.

- a) If I were you, I'd go to the doctor's.  
I think *..you should go to the doctor's.*.....
- b) It's a good idea to wear a warm coat.  
You .....
- c) My advice is to leave early.  
I think you .....
- d) It's a good idea to take more exercise.  
You .....
- e) In my opinion, it's a good idea for you to read a lot.  
I think .....
- f) It's a good idea to do that.  
You .....
- g) My advice is for you to ride a bike.  
I think .....
- h) If I were you, I would buy a dog.  
I think .....

# Unit 38

**You mustn't do that!**  
**You don't have to write.**  
**You shouldn't do that!**

Modals of negative obligation

## **mustn't**

must not = mustn't

<i>I mustn't do that.</i>	<i>He mustn't do that.</i>	<i>We mustn't do that.</i>
<i>You mustn't do that.</i>	<i>She mustn't do that.</i>	<i>They mustn't do that.</i>
	<i>It mustn't do that.</i>	

*You mustn't shout!* (These actions are not allowed.)  
*Students must not eat or drink in the classroom.*

*Must not* is more formal and is used in written English.

## **don't have to**

do not = don't does not = doesn't

<i>I don't have to</i>	<i>he doesn't have to</i>	<i>we don't have to</i>
<i>you don't have to</i>	<i>she doesn't have to</i>	<i>they don't have to</i>
	<i>it doesn't have to</i>	

*We don't have to go to school tomorrow.* (These actions are not necessary.)  
*Jim doesn't have to get up early tomorrow.*

## **shouldn't**

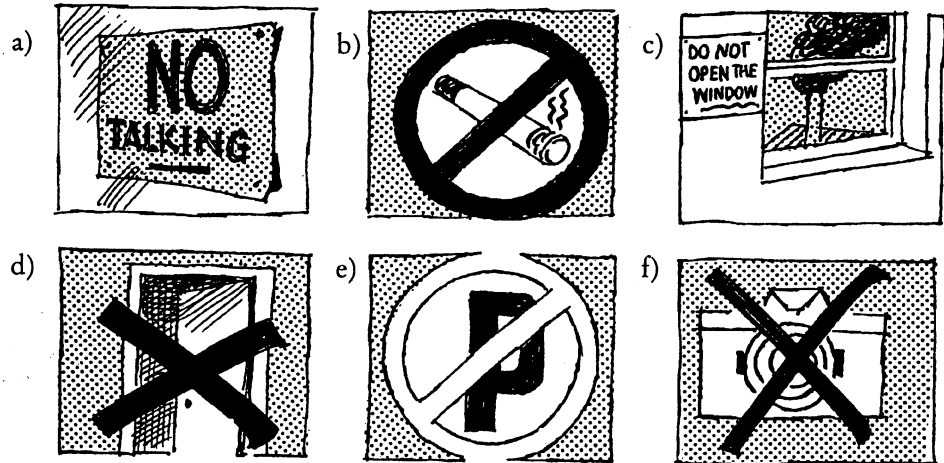
should not = shouldn't

*Shouldn't* gives the speaker's opinion of what is a bad thing to do.

*You shouldn't watch television all day.* (In my opinion this is a bad idea.)  
*Kate shouldn't eat so much chocolate.*

**1**

Look at each picture and say what you mustn't do.



- a) *...You mustn't talk.....*
- b) .....
- c) .....
- d) .....
- e) .....
- f) .....

**2**

Read the list of what a good athlete should and shouldn't do. Write sentences with *should* and *shouldn't*.

- a) smoke *...You shouldn't smoke.....*
- b) keep fit *...You should keep fit.....*
- c) eat fresh fruit and vegetables .....
- d) drink alcohol .....
- e) go to the gym .....
- f) eat lots of pizzas and beefburgers .....
- g) go to bed late every night .....
- h) take drugs .....

**3**

Make negative sentences.

- a) Kate has to take an exam tomorrow.  
*...Kate doesn't have to take an exam tomorrow.....*
- b) Jim has to get up early.  
.....
- c) I have to make a phone call.  
.....
- d) George has to do the shopping.  
.....
- e) You must sit here.  
.....
- f) We have to decide now.  
.....
- g) Helen has to do her homework.  
.....
- h) You must forget about it.  
.....

# Unit 39

*She could hear him. I couldn't move.* Modals – past  
*I had to leave. We didn't have to go.*

## Past ability

- *could*

<i>I could hear.</i>	<i>He could hear.</i>	<i>We could hear.</i>
<i>You could hear.</i>	<i>She could hear.</i>	<i>They could hear.</i>
	<i>It could hear.</i>	

*Jane could swim when she was six.* (She knew how to swim.)

- *couldn't*

could not = couldn't

<i>I couldn't hear.</i>	<i>He couldn't hear.</i>	<i>We couldn't hear.</i>
<i>You couldn't hear.</i>	<i>She couldn't hear.</i>	<i>They couldn't hear.</i>
	<i>It couldn't hear.</i>	

*I looked for my wallet but I couldn't find it.*

## Past obligation

- *had to* (*must* does not have a past form – use *had to*)

<i>I had to go.</i>	<i>He had go.</i>	<i>We had to go.</i>
<i>You had to go.</i>	<i>She had go.</i>	<i>They had to go.</i>
	<i>It had to go.</i>	

*I had to do a lot of homework yesterday.*

- *didn't have to*

did not = didn't

<i>I didn't have to go.</i>	<i>He didn't have to go.</i>	<i>We didn't have to go.</i>
<i>You didn't have to go.</i>	<i>She didn't have to go.</i>	<i>They didn't have to go.</i>
	<i>It didn't have to go.</i>	

*Tom didn't have to go to school today.*

**1**

Complete each sentence a) to h) with an ending from 1) to 8).

- a) I didn't light a fire because .5.
  - b) I didn't do my homework because ...
  - c) I didn't use the computer because ...
  - d) I didn't do the shopping because ...
  - e) I didn't go to the doctor's because ...
  - f) I didn't go to the party because ...
  - g) I didn't phone Jim because ...
  - h) I didn't go to the library because ...
- 1) I couldn't find the time.
  - 2) I couldn't remember his number.
  - 3) I couldn't make an appointment.
  - 4) I couldn't understand the instructions.
  - 5) I couldn't find the matches.
  - 6) I couldn't remember the exercise.
  - 7) I couldn't get ready in time.
  - 8) I couldn't go to the supermarket.

**2**

Write what you *had to do* or *didn't have to do* yesterday.

- a) wash the dishes .....*I didn't have to wash the dishes*.....
- b) cook dinner .....
- c) do homework .....
- d) go shopping .....
- e) go to school .....
- f) write a letter .....
- g) look after the baby .....
- h) go to work .....

**3**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use *could/ couldn't* or *had to/didn't have to*.

- a) It was impossible for Sarah to get home before 7.00.  
Sarah ...*couldn't get home before 7.00*.....
- b) It was necessary for Paul to leave at 6.00 to catch his plane.  
Paul .....
- c) It was necessary for Tokiko to fill in an application form.  
Tokiko .....
- d) It was impossible for us to believe our luck!  
We .....
- e) It wasn't necessary for Mike to wait long for the bus.  
Mike .....
- f) Ann's friend knew how to speak five languages.  
Ann's friend .....
- g) It wasn't necessary for me to walk home.  
I .....
- h) Sorry I didn't phone, but it was impossible to find your number.  
Sorry I didn't phone, but I .....

# Unit 40

***I may see you next week.***  
***I might see you next week.***  
***The cat could be in the kitchen.***  
***It can't be Tuesday!***  
***It must be Wednesday!***

Modals:  
 possibility  
 uncertainty  
 impossibility  
 certainty

- Possibility or uncertainty – future time  
*Our team might win the basketball match.* (It's possible.)  
*I may /might see you next week.* (Perhaps I will.)  
*I may/might not have time to finish tonight.* (I don't know.)
- Possibility – present time (often used with *be*)  
*The cat could be in the kitchen.* (Perhaps it is.)  
*The baby may/might be crying because he's tired.* (It's possible.)
- Impossibility or certainty – present time  
*It can't be Tuesday today! It was Tuesday yesterday!*  
 (I'm sure it isn't Tuesday. This is impossible!)  
*He must be at home.* (I'm sure he is.)  
*She can't be in Italy! I saw her today!* (I'm sure she isn't.)
- We cannot use *can't* and *must* for impossibility or certainty in future time.

## Careful!

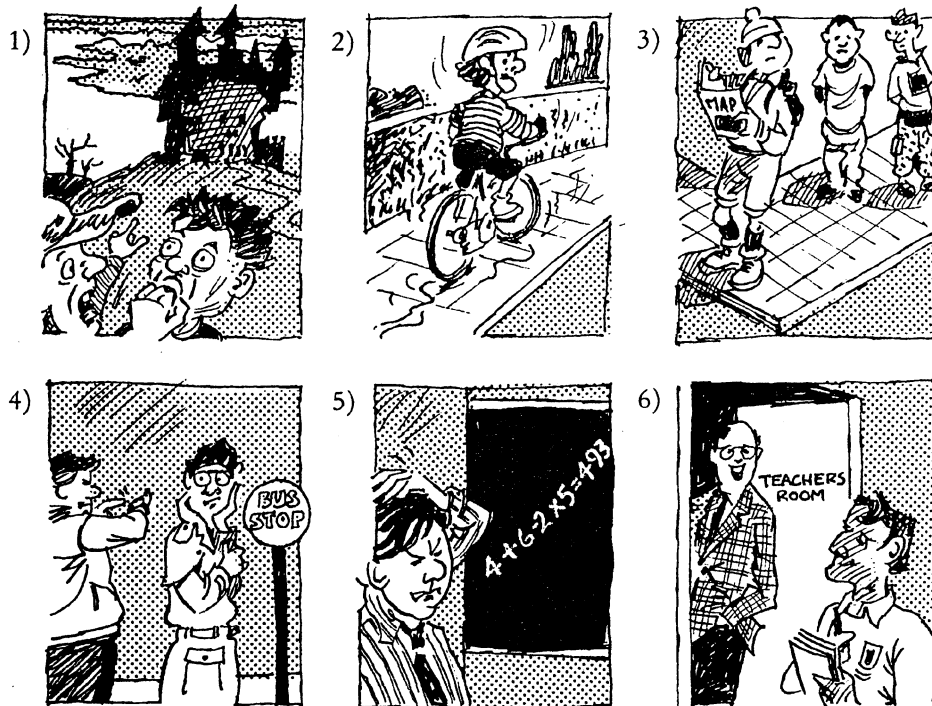
We can't say:  
*It can be Tuesday!*  
*It mustn't be Tuesday.*

**1**  
 Write a second sentence with a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use *might*, *can't* or *must*.

- a) Perhaps it will rain. *...It might rain.....*
- b) I'm sure this is right. ....
- c) Perhaps I'll see you tomorrow. ....
- d) I'm sure that isn't the answer. ....
- e) I'm sure this is the place. ....
- f) Perhaps I won't come to your party. ....
- g) I'm sure you're not serious! ....
- h) I'm sure we are early. ....

**2**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) Try room 4. She might be teaching. ..6..
- b) I think he must be a tourist. ....
- c) This can't be the right house! ....
- d) I think your watch must be wrong. ....
- e) This can't be right! ....
- f) Careful! You might fall off! ....

**3**

Choose the best word or phrase.

- a) Take an umbrella. It ..7.. later on.
  - 1) might rain    2) must rain
- b) Jim always goes on holiday to the same place. He ..... it there!
  - 1) might like    2) must like
- c) Paula isn't sure about the party. She .....
  - 1) must not come    2) may not come
- d) Let's ask Tim. He ..... the answer.
  - 1) might know    2) can't know
- e) I suppose that aliens ..... the earth. Anything is possible!
  - 1) can't visit    2) could visit
- f) Hello, you ..... George. I've heard a lot about you!
  - 1) must be    2) might be
- g) That ..... Helen's bike. Hers is green, and bigger than that.
  - 1) must be    2) can't be
- h) I'll try to finish, but I ..... enough time.
  - 1) can't have    2) might not have

# Unit 41

## Modals: problems and contrasts

- Modals do not have third person -s endings.  
*I can swim. Helen can swim.*
- One modal has more than one meaning. This depends on the context.  
*You must pay before 21st January.* (Obligation)  
*I think Carol must be very happy.* (Certainty)  
*Can you use a computer?* (Ability)  
*Can you open the window?* (Informal request)  
*Nick can't dance. He's never learned.* (Inability – not able to do it)  
*It can't be Tuesday!* (Impossibility)
- Some modals have the same meanings in the same context.  
*I have to go. = I must go.*

The negative forms have different meanings.

*I don't have to go.* (It's not necessary.)  
*I mustn't go.* (It's not allowed.)

- Some modals have only small differences of meaning.  
*I have to wear a suit and tie.* (This is the rule.)  
*I should wear a suit and tie.* (This is not a rule but people expect me to do it. I can choose not to do it!)



*Alan has to study for his exam, but he can't concentrate.*



**1**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) We mustn't/don't have to go to school on Tuesday. It's a holiday.
- b) In this country, you have to/should have an identity card.
- c) Sorry I'm late. I must/had to go to the doctor's.
- d) You don't have to/shouldn't eat so much chocolate. It's bad for you!
- e) I'm sorry, but I'm not able to/don't have to meet you tomorrow.
- f) You mustn't/don't have to leave the room without permission.
- g) David is only ten, but he must/can play chess very well.
- h) Where did you have to/must you go yesterday?
- i) I don't think you must/should go out today.
- j) Sorry, I don't understand. I can't/mustn't speak German.

**2**

Write a second sentence with a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) It wasn't necessary for me to go to school yesterday.  
**have**  
...*I didn't have to go to school yesterday.*.....
- b) I'm sure this isn't right.  
**can't**  
.....
- c) Tina knew how to play the piano at an early age.  
**could**  
.....
- d) Perhaps I'll see you tomorrow.  
**may**  
.....
- e) Harry managed to repair the radio.  
**able**  
.....
- f) It was necessary for Bill to return his library book.  
**had**  
.....
- g) It's possible that Carol will phone tonight.  
**might**  
.....

**3**

Put one suitable word in each space. More than one answer is possible.

- a) Jack ...*has*..... to be home before 10.00.
- b) Emma ..... swim very well for a child of her age.
- c) Students ..... not leave coats in this room.
- d) We ..... to get up before 6.00 tomorrow.
- e) I think we ..... go home now.
- f) Jenny ..... to leave early in the morning.
- g) You don't ..... to do this if you don't want to.
- h) Tim ..... to do all his homework again.
- i) You ..... sign the form and return it by next Monday.
- j) Sorry, but I'm not ..... to come to the meeting tomorrow.

## Unit 42 Consolidation 6

### 1

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- Sorry I'm late. I (had to go)/may go to the library.
- My brother could walk/might walk before he started talking.
- You've worked very hard. You could be/must be tired.
- George didn't have to wait/hadn't to wait long for the bus.
- Don't wait for me. I could be/had to be late.
- This can't be/mustn't be your bag. It hasn't got your name on it.
- Helen mustn't do/couldn't do her homework, because she was ill.
- This bus had to go/might go to the centre. Shall I ask the driver?
- Sam dropped the three glasses, but was able to catch/might catch one!
- The weather forecast says it may rain/had to rain tomorrow.

### 2

Put one suitable word in each space.

- That was a long walk! You .....*must*..... be tired.
- Sorry I was away yesterday. I ..... to go to the hospital.
- Will you be ..... to give me some help tomorrow?
- Do you ..... to go now?
- Peter ..... ride a bike when he was seven.
- Mary ..... be in her bedroom. The light is on.
- Students ..... not leave their bicycles near this door. It is forbidden.
- We ..... to try very hard, but we succeeded in the end.
- Kate is only six, but she ..... swim very well.
- Everyone ..... be here at 8.30. Don't be late!

### 3

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- I'm sure that bag isn't yours.  
That .....*can't be*..... your bag.
- My advice is to talk to your teacher about it.  
I think you .....
- It's not necessary for you to be here before 8.00.  
You .....
- I'm sure that Sam knows the answer.  
Sam ..... the answer.
- I'm sorry I'm late. It was necessary for me to go to the doctor's.  
I'm sorry I'm late. I .....
- Perhaps Cathy is at the library.  
Cathy ..... at the library.
- What is your advice?  
What do you think ..... do?
- I'm sure Alan isn't in the garden.  
Alan ..... in the garden.

**4**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) It's very important for you to be here at 6.00.  
**must**  
...*You must be here at 6.00.*.....
- b) It's impossible for me to see you tomorrow.  
**can't**  
.....
- c) It's necessary to press the button twice.  
**to**  
.....
- d) It's not a good idea to eat lots of sweets.  
**shouldn't**  
.....
- e) It's not possible for Jean to come to the party.  
**able**  
.....
- f) It's not necessary for you to pay now.  
**don't**  
.....
- g) Parking here is forbidden.  
**mustn't**  
.....
- h) It's necessary for you to work harder.  
**should**  
.....

**5**

Put **one** suitable word in each space. *Can't*, *couldn't*, etc. are one word.

- a) You're only wearing a t-shirt and shorts. You *...must.....* feel cold!
- b) I ..... not be at school tomorrow. I feel ill.
- c) Tina searched the swimming pool, but wasn't ..... to find her ring.
- d) Perhaps you left your wallet on the bus, or it ..... be at home.
- e) The exam was long, and I ..... finish all the questions.
- f) Brian didn't ..... to do any homework, so he went to the cinema.
- g) This ..... be the house. It's the wrong number. Let's try down there.
- h) Ann ..... run much faster than her friends.
- i) This bill ..... be right. There's a mistake in it somewhere.
- j) Sorry I was out. I ..... to go to the shops.

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the differences between *mustn't* and *don't have to*.
- 2 What other problems with modals do you have in Units 36 to 41?

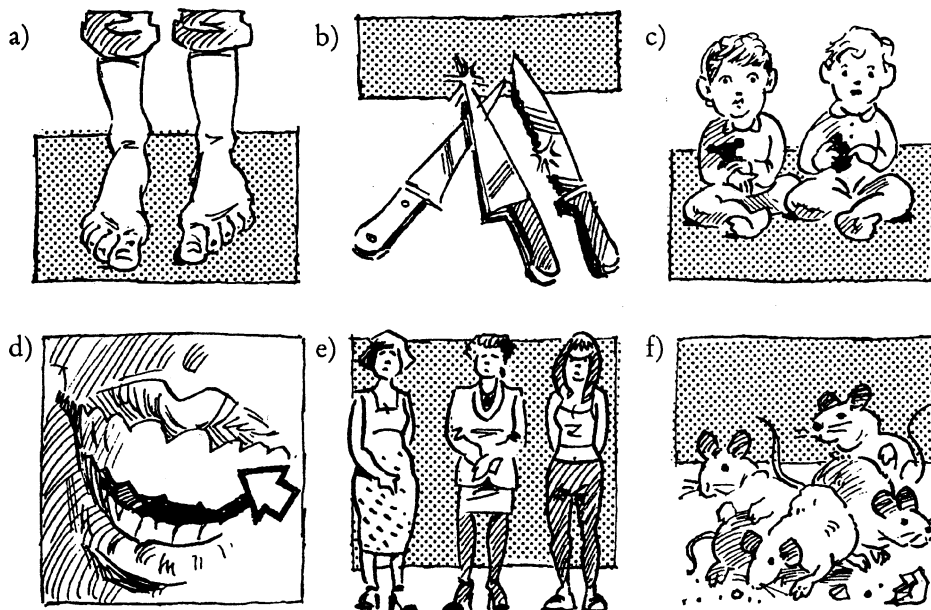
# Unit 43

**Cats, boxes** Plural nouns  
**knives, mice**

- Spelling rules for regular noun plurals
  - One vowel, one consonant  
*cat* → *cats*    *bed* → *beds*
  - Words ending in *ss, sh*  
*glass* → *glasses*    *dish* → *dishes*
  - Words ending in *ch*  
*match* → *matches*    *watch* → *watches*
  - Words ending in *x*  
*box* → *boxes*    *fax* → *faxes*
  - Words ending in *o*  
*potato* → *potatoes*    *tomato* → *tomatoes*
  - Words ending in consonant and *y*  
*family* → *families*
  - Words ending in vowel and *y*  
*donkey* → *donkeys*
- Irregular noun plurals
  - Some nouns have irregular plurals or do not change.  
*knife* → *knives*    *life* → *lives*  
*leaf* → *leaves*    *thief* → *thieves*  
*shelf* → *shelves*    *self* → *selves*
  
  - man* → *men*  
*woman* → *women*  
*child* → *children*  
*tooth* → *teeth*  
*mouse* → *mice*  
*foot* → *feet*
- No change
  - Some words have the same singular and plural.  
*sheep* → *sheep*  
*fish* → *fish (fishes)*
  
  - Some words are always plural.  
*scissors*    *a pair of scissors*  
*trousers/jeans/shorts*    *a pair of trousers/jeans/shorts*

**1**

What are they?



- a) ..*feet*..    b) .....    c) .....    d) .....    e) .....    f) .....

**2**

Write the plural of each word in brackets.

- a) Can you go to the shops? We need some (potato) ..*potatoes*.....  
 b) Most (family) ..... enjoy going on holiday together.  
 c) Close the window. The room is full of (fly) .....  
 d) Jack decided to make some (bookshelf) ..... for his bedroom.  
 e) My little brother has got two white (mouse) ..... as pets.  
 f) Do you think you could help me wash the (dish) .....?  
 g) The room was full of mothers with their (baby) .....  
 h) Joe bought his friends some (knife) ..... and forks.  
 i) Sue bought three (box) ..... of chocolates.  
 j) In the afternoon we went to the zoo and fed the (monkey) .....

**3**

Complete the words.

- a) In the autumn, the *leaves*..... on the trees change colour, and then fall off.  
 b) The teachers in our school have very busy l..... They work really hard all the time!  
 c) My dentist told me to brush my t..... after every meal.  
 d) In the library there were lots of s..... full of books.  
 e) We wanted to light a fire so we bought a box of m.....  
 f) The two t..... stole some money, but were caught by the police.  
 g) Kate has got two c....., a son and a daughter.  
 h) These shoes are too small for me. I've got very big f.....  
 i) Nowadays w..... want to do the same jobs as men.  
 j) My eyes ache when I read. I think I need new g.....

# Unit 44

***I've got an umbrella.***  
***There are some chairs.***  
***Have you got any pencils?***

Countable and  
uncountable nouns:  
*an, some, any*

## Countable nouns

We can count countable nouns.  
*a bottle two bottles three bottles*

Countable nouns – singular *a/an*  
We use *an* before words beginning with a vowel.  
*I've got an umbrella. Have you got a chair?*

Countable nouns – plural *some, any, not any*  
We use *some* for statements.  
*There are some chairs in the other room.*

We use *any* for questions.  
*Are there any chairs in the other room?*

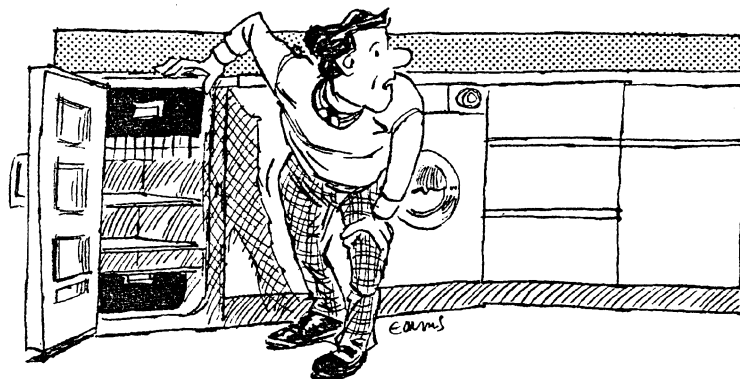
We use *not ... any* for negatives.  
*There aren't any chairs in the other room.*

## Uncountable (mass) nouns

We cannot count uncountable nouns.  
*some coffee some milk some rice*



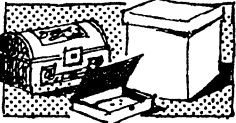



All uncountable/mass nouns *some, any, not any*  
*We bought some tea.*  
*Did you buy any tea?*  
*We didn't buy any tea.*

- Could you buy me some tea? (A definite idea.)  
*Are there some sandwiches for me?*



*There isn't any food left.*

**1**Write *a* or *some*.

- a)  ..... a ..... tree
- b)  ..... snow
- c)  ..... boxes
- d)  ..... coffee
- e)  ..... water
- f)  ..... cup

**2**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Jack hasn't got a/any brother.
- b) There weren't some/any letters for me this morning.
- c) Could I have a/some water, please?
- d) I went to the supermarket because I didn't have a/any milk.
- e) There isn't a/any railway station in this town.
- f) Sorry, we don't have some/any sandwiches left.
- g) Have you got a/any pen that I can borrow?
- h) There aren't some/any trees in our street.
- i) Jane wrote a/some letter to her penfriend.
- j) Can you go to the shops? We need some/any eggs.

**3**Put *some* or *any* in each space.

- a) There aren't ..... any ..... good restaurants in this town.
- b) Don't worry about lunch. I've brought ..... sandwiches.
- c) You need ..... scissors to cut the paper.
- d) Have you got ..... brothers and sisters?
- e) I think you owe me ..... money.
- f) We'd like to stay longer, but we don't have ..... time.
- g) Could you give me ..... information please?
- h) Sam bought ..... trousers in the sale.
- i) There are ..... books on the table. Are they yours?
- j) Could you bring me ..... bread from the supermarket?

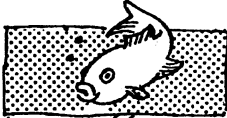

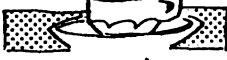









# Unit 45

*a fish, some fish*  
*furniture, money*

Countable and uncountable nouns:  
problems

Some nouns are countable with one meaning and uncountable with another meaning.

## Change of meaning

<i>a fish</i>		<i>some fish</i>	
<i>a coffee</i>		<i>some coffee</i>	
<i>a paper</i>		<i>some paper</i>	
<i>a wood</i>		<i>some wood</i>	
<i>an iron</i>		<i>some iron</i>	
<i>a glass</i>		<i>some glass</i>	

## Uncountables with no s plural

<i>advice</i>	<i>Can I have some advice?</i>
<i>spaghetti</i>	<i>I'd like some spaghetti.</i>
<i>English (language)</i>	<i>Your English is good!</i>
<i>hair</i>	<i>Your hair is beautiful!</i>
<i>furniture</i>	<i>This furniture is very modern.</i>
<i>information</i>	<i>Could you give me some information?</i>
<i>weather</i>	<i>The weather is awful!</i>
<i>money</i>	<i>The money is on the table.</i>
<i>luggage</i>	<i>My luggage is in the taxi.</i>

## Other problems

<i>people</i>	<i>There are some people in the garden.</i> <i>There is a person in the garden.</i>
<i>bread</i>	<i>Could you buy a loaf of bread?</i> <i>(We cannot say a bread.)</i>
<i>fish</i>	<i>One fish, two fish, etc.</i>
<i>police</i>	<i>The police are coming!</i> (singular form, plural verb)
<i>news</i>	<i>The news is on TV.</i> (plural form, singular verb)



**1**

Put *a/an* in each space, or leave it blank.

- a) The old bridge was made of ..... iron.
- b) Shall we have ..... fish? This restaurant is famous for it.
- c) Could you bring me ..... glass, please?
- d) They make these towels from ..... recycled paper.
- e) This table is made of ..... wood.
- f) That was silly of me. Now there's ..... coffee all over the table.
- g) My shirt is dry now. Have you got ..... iron?
- h) One wall is ..... glass, so there is lots of light in the room.
- i) Can you buy me ..... paper? I want to check the football results.
- j) There's ..... small wood at the end of our garden.

**2**

Choose the best word or phrase.

- a) I'll post your letters. Have you got ..2.?  
1) a stamp    2) any stamps    3) any stamp
- b) The streets were empty. There weren't ..... there.  
1) peoples    2) some people    3) any people
- c) Have you got ..... ? I can help you.  
1) a luggage    2) some luggages    3) any luggage
- d) Do you like ..... ? No, I don't.  
1) hot milk    2) a hot milk    3) some hot milk
- e) We've just moved into our house, and we haven't got .....  
1) a furniture    2) any furniture    3) some furniture
- f) There wasn't any wood, so we used .....  
1) plastic    2) any plastic    3) a plastic
- g) Can you help me? I'd like .....  
1) an advice    2) some advice    3) advices
- h) There's been a robbery! Call .....  
1) a police    2) some police    3) the police

**3**

Put *is* or *are* in each space.

- a) Helen's hair ~~is~~..... very long.
- b) The weather ..... really good at the moment.
- c) Don't worry. The police here ..... very friendly.
- d) Can you turn on the television? The news ..... on.
- e) Women ..... usually better listeners than men.
- f) Where ..... the money that I gave you yesterday?
- g) Your glasses ..... on the table.
- h) David's French ..... good. He's been taking lessons.
- i) Where ..... my trousers? I left them here.
- j) The people here ..... very friendly.

# Unit 46

***There isn't much time.***  
***There aren't many seats.***  
***How much does it cost?***  
***How many eggs have you got?***

Countable and uncountable nouns:  
*much, many, how much, how many*

***much and many***  
**– questions and negatives**

*There isn't much time.*      countable  
*Is there much time?*

*There aren't many seats.*      uncountable  
*Are there many seats?*

In informal statements, we use *lots of*.

*There is lots of time.*  
*There are lots of seats.*

In formal statements, we use *many*.

*Many people believe in ghosts.*  
*Mr Harrison visited Argentina many years ago.*

***How much ...?***  
**– uncountables**

*How much homework have you got?*      *Lots!*  
*How much time have we got?*      *We've got fifteen minutes.*  
*How much milk do you want?*      *Not much.*

***How many ...?***  
**– countables**

*How many pages do you have to read?*      *Ten.*  
*How many brothers and sisters have you got?*      *Two brothers.*  
*How many people are there here?*      *A hundred.*



*'How many players are there?' 'Not very many.'*

**1**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) There isn't many/much food in the fridge, I'm afraid.
- b) Have you read many/much books in German?
- c) We don't have many/much rain in the summer.
- d) There isn't many/much coffee left.
- e) You haven't made many/much mistakes.
- f) Have you got many/much friends in this town?
- g) Hurry up. We haven't got many/much time.
- h) Do many/much cars park in this street?
- i) The cinema is nearly full. There aren't many/much seats left.
- j) Have you got many/much studying to do tonight?

**2**

Complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

- a) .....*How much*..... money have you got?
- b) ..... students are in the class?
- c) ..... words do we have to write?
- d) ..... paper do you need?
- e) ..... pages are there in this book?
- f) ..... time have we got left?
- g) ..... water do you drink in a day?
- h) ..... times have you been to London?
- i) ..... food have we got?
- j) ..... people are there in this town?

**3**

Put **one** word in each space.

- a) I'll try to call you tonight, but I don't have ..*much*..... time.
- b) How ..... times do you brush your teeth every day?
- c) Shall I make some more tea? I didn't make .....
- d) Kate only ate a sandwich because she didn't have ..... money.
- e) There weren't ..... seats so some of us had to stand up.
- f) Have you got ..... work, or do you want to come to the cinema?
- g) We invited lots of people to our party, but not ..... turned up.
- h) You'll have to share, because there aren't ..... books.

**4**

Write a question for each answer. Use *How much* or *How many*.

- a) ...*How many brothers have you got*.....? I've got two brothers.
- b) .....? It costs £2.00.
- c) .....? There are ten people.
- d) .....? I need two bicycles.
- e) .....? I'd like a lot of rice.
- f) .....? He has got three children.
- g) .....? I haven't got any money.
- h) .....? I only want a little.

# Unit 47

*I've got too much work.*  
*There are too many people.*  
*Are there enough chairs?*  
*There isn't enough time.*

Countable and uncountable nouns:  
*too much, too many, enough,*  
*not enough*

**too much –  
uncountables**

*I've put too much sugar in my tea.* (more than I wanted)  
*I've got too much work.* (more than is possible)

**too many –  
countables**

*There are too many students in this class.* (It's very crowded.)  
*I've got too many books. I need some new shelves!* (The shelves are full.)

**enough –  
countable and  
uncountable**

*Are there enough chairs? No. There are twenty people and fifteen chairs.*  
*Is there enough time? Yes. We can have lunch and then catch the bus.*

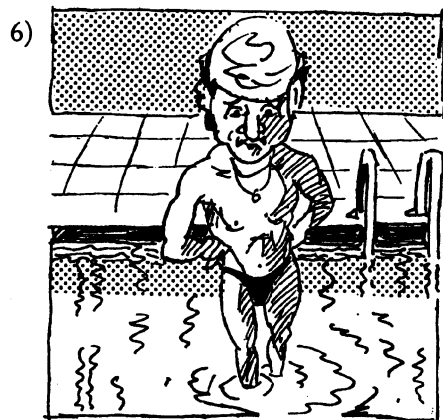
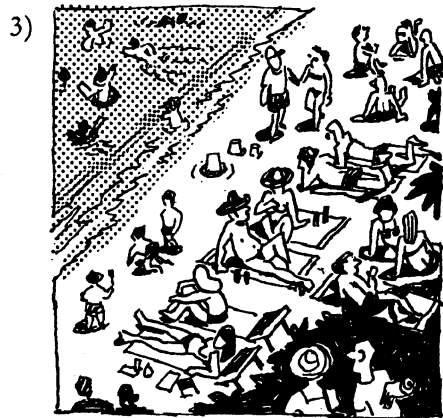
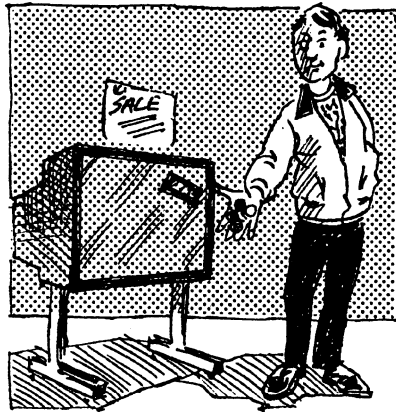
*There aren't enough chairs.*  
*There isn't enough time.*



*There are too many students in the classroom. There aren't enough chairs.*

**1**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- |                               |       |                                 |       |
|-------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------|
| a) There is too much noise.   | ..... | d) I haven't got enough money.  | ..... |
| b) There are too many people. | ..... | e) There aren't enough chairs.  | ..... |
| c) There isn't enough water.  | ..... | f) I put too much pepper in it. | ..... |

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Underline the correct sentence.

- a) Sorry, but I can't pay the bill.  
1) I've got too much money.                      2) I haven't got enough money.
- b) I cooked spaghetti for ten, but only two people came.  
1) I've got too much spaghetti.                      2) I've got too many spaghetti.
- c) Jim is very lonely.  
1) He has got too many friends.                      2) He hasn't got enough friends.
- d) You can't take ten suitcases on the plane!  
1) You've got too much luggage.                      2) You haven't got enough luggage.
- e) Please share the books, one between two.  
1) There are too many books.                      2) There aren't enough books.
- f) Eight people can't go in one taxi.  
1) There is too much room.                      2) There isn't enough room.
- g) We didn't enjoy our holiday.  
1) There was too much rain.                      2) There wasn't enough rain.
- h) Please write this again.  
1) There are too many mistakes.                      2) There aren't enough mistakes.

**3**

Explain the problem. Use *too much* or *too many* and the word in brackets.

- a) This room is very crowded. (people)  
.....*There are too many people*.....
- b) I can't hear anything you say! (noise)  
.....
- c) I'm very busy, so I can't come out. (things to do)  
.....
- d) There is a traffic jam in the city centre. (cars)  
.....
- e) My coffee is very sweet! I can't drink it! (sugar)  
.....
- f) I can't find room on the shelves for all my books! (books)  
.....

**4**

Choose the best ending for each sentence.

- a) I can't play tennis now.
  - b) I feel a bit sick.
  - c) I can't drive you home.
  - d) I can't have a bath.
  - e) There is no room in my wardrobe.
  - f) I can't sleep in this room.
  - g) I can't read here.
  - h) I can't eat this soup.
  - i) I can't make a cake.
  - j) I can't buy a new bike.
- 1) There isn't enough light.
  - 2) There's too much noise.
  - 3) I haven't got enough money.
  - 4) I've got too many clothes.
  - 5) I haven't got enough sugar.
  - 6) I haven't got enough petrol.
  - 7) I've got too much homework.
  - 8) I've eaten too many apples.
  - 9) There's too much salt in it.
  - 10) There isn't enough hot water.

# Unit 48

**one, first, a half** Numbers: cardinal, ordinal, fractions and decimals

## Cardinal numbers

1 <i>one</i>	11 <i>eleven</i>	21 <i>twenty-one</i>
2 <i>two</i>	12 <i>twelve</i>	22 <i>twenty-two, etc.</i>
3 <i>three</i>	13 <i>thirteen</i>	30 <i>thirty</i>
4 <i>four</i>	14 <i>fourteen</i>	40 <i>forty</i>
5 <i>five</i>	15 <i>fifteen</i>	50 <i>fifty</i>
6 <i>six</i>	16 <i>sixteen</i>	60 <i>sixty</i>
7 <i>seven</i>	17 <i>seventeen</i>	70 <i>seventy</i>
8 <i>eight</i>	18 <i>eighteen</i>	80 <i>eighty</i>
9 <i>nine</i>	19 <i>nineteen</i>	90 <i>ninety</i>
10 <i>ten</i>	20 <i>twenty</i>	100 <i>a hundred/one hundred</i>

0 = *nought* or *zero*. In telephone numbers we say it like the letter 'O'. In football we say *nil*. In tennis we say *love*.

101	<i>a hundred and one</i>
200	<i>two hundred</i> (hundred does not have a plural s)
300	<i>three hundred</i>
999	<i>nine hundred and ninety-nine</i>
1,000	<i>a thousand/one thousand</i>
1,001	<i>a thousand and one</i>
2,250	<i>two thousand, two hundred and fifty</i> (thousand has no plural s)
999,999	<i>nine hundred and ninety-nine thousand, nine hundred and ninety-nine</i>
1,000,000	<i>a million/one million</i>
5,000,000	<i>five million</i> (million does not have a plural s)

## Ordinal numbers

1st <i>first</i>	9th <i>ninth</i>	17th <i>seventeenth</i>	25th <i>twenty-fifth</i>
2nd <i>second</i>	10th <i>tenth</i>	18th <i>eighteenth</i>	26th <i>twenty-sixth</i>
3rd <i>third</i>	11th <i>eleventh</i>	19th <i>nineteenth</i>	27th <i>twenty-seventh</i>
4th <i>fourth</i>	12th <i>twelfth</i>	20th <i>twentieth</i>	28th <i>twenty-eighth</i>
5th <i>fifth</i>	13th <i>thirteenth</i>	21st <i>twenty-first</i>	29th <i>twenty-ninth</i>
6th <i>sixth</i>	14th <i>fourteenth</i>	22nd <i>twenty-second</i>	30th <i>thirtieth</i>
7th <i>seventh</i>	15th <i>fifteenth</i>	23rd <i>twenty-third</i>	31st <i>thirty-first</i>
8th <i>eighth</i>	16th <i>sixteenth</i>	24th <i>twenty-fourth</i>	

## Other examples

Fractions and decimals

$\frac{1}{2}$ = <i>a half</i>	$1\frac{1}{2}$ = <i>one and a half</i>	1.5 = <i>one point five</i>
$\frac{1}{4}$ = <i>a quarter</i>	$2\frac{1}{4}$ = <i>two and a quarter</i>	2.25 = <i>two point two five</i>
$\frac{3}{4}$ = <i>three quarters</i>	$5\frac{3}{4}$ = <i>five and three quarters</i>	5.75 = <i>five point seven five</i>

Elementary Language Practice

- 1**  
Write the words as cardinal numbers.
- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| a) a hundred and nine                      | .....109..... |
| b) eighty-seven                            | .....         |
| c) two hundred and fifty-five              | .....         |
| d) three hundred and thirty-two            | .....         |
| e) nine hundred and ninety-eight           | .....         |
| f) two thousand and one                    | .....         |
| g) two million                             | .....         |
| h) two hundred thousand                    | .....         |
| i) fifty one thousand, two hundred and ten | .....         |
| j) four thousand, nine hundred and twelve  | .....         |

- 2**  
Write the cardinal numbers as words.
- |       |                             |       |       |
|-------|-----------------------------|-------|-------|
| a) 18 | ..... <i>eighteen</i> ..... | f) 64 | ..... |
| b) 90 | .....                       | g) 97 | ..... |
| c) 49 | .....                       | h) 23 | ..... |
| d) 71 | .....                       | i) 14 | ..... |
| e) 8  | .....                       | j) 56 | ..... |

- 3**  
Write the ordinal numbers as words.
- |         |                          |         |       |
|---------|--------------------------|---------|-------|
| a) 3rd  | ..... <i>third</i> ..... | f) 5th  | ..... |
| b) 9th  | .....                    | g) 2nd  | ..... |
| c) 21st | .....                    | h) 43rd | ..... |
| d) 30th | .....                    | i) 1st  | ..... |
| e) 14th | .....                    | j) 10th | ..... |

- 4**  
Tick the best answer.
- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| a) 296            | = 1) two thousand, nine hundred and sixty       |
|                   | 2) two hundred and ninety-six ✓                 |
| b) 5,695          | = 1) five thousand, six hundred and ninety-five |
|                   | 2) fifty six hundred and nine and five          |
| c) 10,000,000     | = 1) ten hundred thousand                       |
|                   | 2) ten million                                  |
| d) 5.75           | = 1) five point seven five                      |
|                   | 2) five comma seventy-five                      |
| e) $\frac{3}{4}$  | = 1) four thirds                                |
|                   | 2) three quarters                               |
| f) $1\frac{1}{2}$ | = 1) a one and half                             |
|                   | 2) one and a half                               |
| g) 200,000        | = 1) two hundred thousand                       |
|                   | 2) two hundred thousands                        |
| h) 17.98          | = 1) seventeen point nine eight                 |
|                   | 2) one seven point nine eight                   |



# Unit 49 Consolidation 7

## 1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Are there a/(any) people at the bus stop?
- b) Sorry, I haven't got some/any time to talk now.
- c) Look at this shirt! Can I borrow an/some iron?
- d) Could I have some/any stamps, please?
- e) There's the milk, and here's a/some glass.
- f) I can't pay the bill! Can you lend me a/some money?
- g) Did you buy a/some paper? I want to read the news.
- h) Could you buy a/some bread at the supermarket?

## 2

Put one suitable word in each space.

- a) How *much*..... does this cost?
- b) Jane has got too ..... luggage.
- c) Sorry, we haven't got ..... cakes left, not a single one.
- d) If you haven't got ..... money, I can lend you some.
- e) There are too ..... people in this room. It's crowded.
- f) How ..... books have you got at home?
- g) The train was crowded because there were too ..... people.
- h) Are there ..... cinemas in this town?

## 3

Put *is* or *are* in each space.

- a) Your trousers *are*..... on the chair.
- b) The mice ..... under your bed!
- c) The news ..... on at 10.00.
- d) Don't worry! The police ..... coming.
- e) People ..... worried about you!
- f) My tooth ..... broken.
- g) Your advice ..... exactly right!
- h) Jill's feet ..... very small!

## 4

Complete each sentence with *much* or *many*.

- a) I can't come to the cinema. I've got too *much*..... homework.
- b) We can't all have baths. There isn't ..... hot water.
- c) Some students don't have ..... opportunities to speak in English.
- d) We can't stop for a meal now. We haven't got ..... time.
- e) Paul felt lonely. He didn't have ..... friends.
- f) Not everyone can sit down. There are too ..... people.
- g) I couldn't sleep last night. There was too ..... noise in the street.
- h) I can't give you a good mark. You've got too ..... mistakes.

Elementary Language Practice

**5**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) I can't afford to go on holiday this year.  
I haven't got ...*enough money*..... to go on holiday this year.
- b) Paula has got long hair.  
Paula's hair ..... long.
- c) My suitcases are over there.  
My luggage ..... over there.
- d) We are short of paper. Can you borrow some?  
We haven't got ..... paper. Can you borrow some?
- e) I'm in a hurry!  
I ..... much time.
- f) There are very few good restaurants in this city.  
There aren't ..... good restaurants in this city.

**6**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Unfortunately, David hasn't got a lot of friends.  
**many**  
...*Unfortunately, David hasn't got many friends*.....
- b) I'm short of tea.  
**haven't**  
.....
- c) There isn't a lot of sugar left.  
**much**  
.....
- d) Can you tell me about hotels in the centre?  
**information**  
.....
- e) Gerry owns this furniture.  
**Gerry's**  
.....
- f) We have run out of milk.  
**any**  
.....

**7**

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) The police here is very helpful. .... *ARE*.....
- b) Can you give me an advice? .....
- c) The news this evening were interesting. ....
- d) The city centre was full of peoples. ....
- e) Thank you for the informations. ....
- f) I haven't got time enough. ....
- g) Do you have much friends? .....
- h) I like your new trouser! .....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the use of these words: *money, hair, people, advice, information, news*. Are they singular or plural in your language?
- 2 Revise the different uses of *much* and *many*.

# Unit 50

## Functions 1 Advice, agreeing/disagreeing, apologizing

A function is language we use for a purpose. What we say depends on the:

place private or public?  
person same age? friend? stranger?, etc.  
topic everyday (borrowing a pen) or more important (borrowing money)?

### Asking for advice

*What do you think I should do?*  
*What would you do?*

### Giving advice

*I think you should (go to the doctor's)*  
*If I were you, I'd (go to the doctor's)*  
*Why don't you (go to the doctor's)?*  
  
*What about (going to the doctor's)?*  
*How about (going to the doctor's)?*

### Agreeing and disagreeing

#### Agreeing

*I agree.*  
*That's right.*  
*I like this film. So do I.*  
*I don't like this film. Neither do I.*

#### Disagreeing

*I don't agree. I don't think so.*

#### Apologizing

*I'm sorry. Sorry, it was my fault. Excuse me.*

#### Replying to apologies

*Never mind. That's all right. Don't worry.*

- We say *Excuse me* when we want to pass someone who is in the way. The usual reply is *Sorry*.
- We say *Excuse me* at the beginning of questions to strangers.

*Elementary Language Practice*

**1**

Complete the speech bubbles 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) Never mind.
- b) How about trying a larger size?
- c) So do I.
- d) What do you think I should do?
- e) Sorry, I've broken this cup.
- f) If I were you, I'd go to the dentist's.

**2**

Put one word in each space.

- a) I've lost your football. ...*Sorry*.....
- b) How about ..... to the cinema?
- c) 'This film is good, isn't it?' 'No, I don't think .....
- d) Sorry about the mess. It's my .....
- e) If I ..... you, I'd stay at home today.
- f) 'I really love this place.' 'So ..... I.'
- g) ..... me, I can't get in.
- h) What's your advice? What do you think I ..... do?

**3**

Match the sentences a) to f) with the replies 1) to 6).

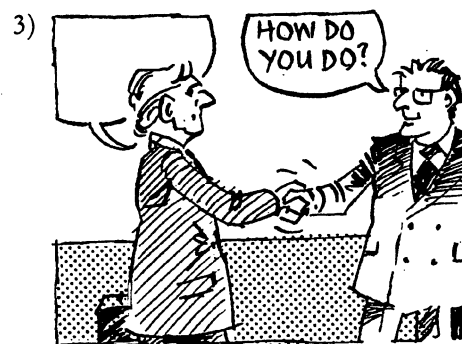
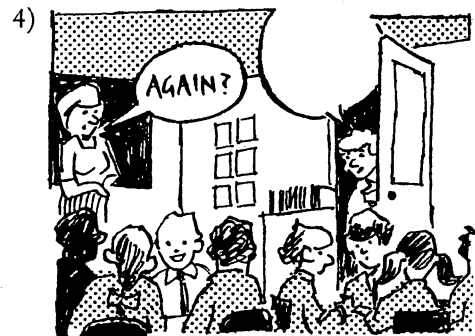
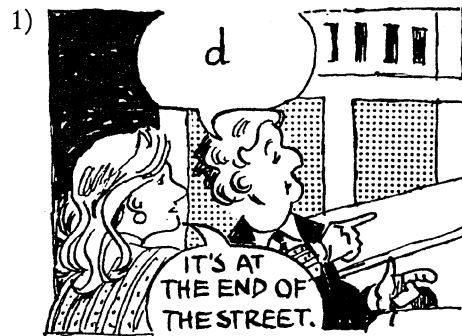
- a) What's your advice?
- b) I really enjoy going to the beach.
- c) Who broke the window?
- d) If I were you, I'd use a dictionary.
- e) I don't like doing homework!
- f) Sorry, I've lost your book.
- 1) Neither do I.
- 2) So do I.
- 3) Don't worry.
- 4) I think you should talk to your teacher about it.
- 5) I did. Sorry!
- 6) Good idea!



**Asking about health and replying**

Question	Reply
How are you?	I'm all right, thanks. Not so good.
How do you feel?	I feel fine/great/awful, etc.

**1**  
Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) How do you do?
- b) What does Naomi look like?
- c) I'm sorry I'm late, but I missed the bus.
- d) Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the bus station?
- e) How are you?
- f) What's Marc like?

**2**

Complete the sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) Can you describe Jack's appearance?  
What *does Jack look* ..... like?
- b) I apologize for being late.  
I'm ..... late.
- c) Where's the *Apollo* cinema?  
Do you ..... to the *Apollo* cinema?
- d) How are you today? Are you still ill?  
How do ..... today? Are you still ill?
- e) Do you know the way to the city centre, please?  
Could ..... to the city centre, please?
- f) What's your opinion of Paris?  
What ..... like?

**3**

Put one word in each space.

- a) ..... *Go* ..... down this street and turn right.
- b) How ..... you do?
- c) Do you know the ..... to the centre?
- d) Bye! I'll ..... you tomorrow.
- e) I'm ..... I'm late.
- f) What is David .....?
- g) 'Hello, ..... are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
- h) Could you ..... me the way to Green Street?
- i) How ..... you feel today?
- j) It's next ..... the bank.

**4**

Match the questions a) to h) with the replies 1) to 8).

- a) What does Sam look like? *5.*
- b) How do you do? .....
- c) Where's the bus station? .....
- d) How do you feel? .....
- e) Bye for now! .....
- f) How are you? .....
- g) Do you know the way to Paris? .....
- h) What's Jim like? .....
- 1) It's opposite the hospital.
- 2) Fine, thanks. How are you?
- 3) He laughs a lot!
- 4) Sorry, I don't.
- 5) He's tall and thin.
- 6) Not so good.
- 7) I'll see you tomorrow.
- 8) How do you do?

# Unit 52

## Functions 3 Asking for information, invitations, offers and permission

### Asking for information

*Do you know the time?* (informal)

*Excuse me, could you tell me the time?* (formal)

*What does this mean, please?*

*How do you say (.....) in English?*

### Inviting and replying to invitations

#### Inviting

*Do you want to (go to the cinema)?* (informal)

*Do you feel like (going to the cinema)?* (informal)

*Would you like to (go to the cinema)?* (formal)

Replying: accepting *Thanks, I'd love to (go).*

refusing *I'm sorry but (I'm going to a party).  
I'm afraid I can't.*

#### Making an Offer

*Can I help (you)?*

*Shall I help (you)?*

#### Offering something

*Do you want (some tea)?* (informal)

*Would you like (some tea)?* (formal)

### Asking for, giving and refusing permission

#### Asking

*Can I (leave early)?*

*Is it all right if I  
(leave early)?*

*May I (leave early)?*

*Do you mind if I  
(open the window)?*

#### Giving

*Yes, you can.*

*Sure. That's OK.*

*Yes, you may.*

*That's fine.*

*Go ahead.*

*All right.*

*No problem.*

#### Refusing

*No, you can't.*

*Sorry, no.*

*No, you may not.*

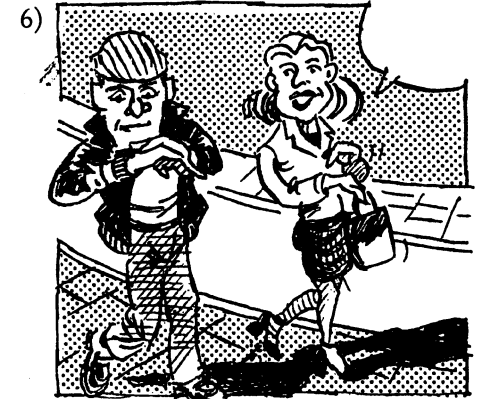
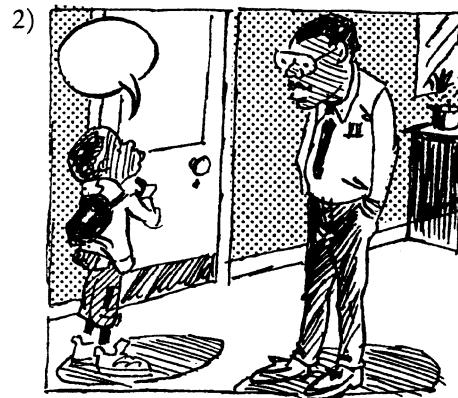
*Sorry, but  
(I'm cold).*

(informal)

(formal)



**1**  
Match the pictures  
1) to 6) with the  
questions a) to f).



- a) May I leave the room?
- b) Excuse me, could you tell me the time?
- c) What does this mean?
- d) Would you like a drink?
- e) Shall I help you?
- f) Would you like to go the match with me?

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Match the questions a) to f) with the replies 1) to 6).

- a) What does this mean? ..3.
  - b) Would you like to play tennis tomorrow? .....
  - c) Shall I help you with those books? .....
  - d) Would you like some ice-cream? .....
  - e) Do you mind if I sit here? .....
  - f) Could you pass me the salt, please? .....
- 1) That's very kind of you. Thanks very much.
  - 2) Thanks, but I'd rather have a drink.
  - 3) Why don't you use the dictionary?
  - 4) Sure, here you are.
  - 5) I'm sorry, but I'm afraid I'm going to the cinema.
  - 6) That's fine, please do.

**3**

Complete each question so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) Let's go to the cinema.  
How ..... *about going to the cinema* .....
- b) Would you like a sandwich?  
Do .....
- c) Do you want to sit down?  
Would .....
- d) Can you open the window, please?  
Would you mind .....
- e) Do you want me to carry your bag?  
Shall .....
- f) Do you know the time?  
Could .....
- g) Do you mind if I turn on the TV?  
May .....
- h) Can I go home now?  
Is it .....

**4**

Write a question for each answer.

- a) ..*Would you mind helping me*.....?  
No, of course I wouldn't mind helping you.
- b) .....?  
Yes, I'd like to go to the disco.
- c) .....?  
No, I'm afraid you can't leave early.
- d) .....?  
Thank you, my books are very heavy.
- e) .....?  
No, not the park. Let's go shopping instead.
- f) .....?  
Yes, certainly. It's six o'clock.

# Unit 53

**Functions 4** Preferences, promises, reminding, requesting, suggesting, warning

## Preferences

*I prefer (tea) to (coffee).*  
*I'd rather have (tea) than (coffee).*

## Promises

*I'll be home at 8.30.*  
*I won't be late again!*

## Reminders

*Don't forget to (bring your dictionary on Wednesday).*  
*Remember to (bring your dictionary on Wednesday).*

## Making requests

*Can you (open the window), please?* (informal)  
*Could you (open the window), please?*  
*Would you mind (opening the window), please?* (formal)

## Replying to requests

*Can you .../Could you ...?* *Of course. Sure.*  
*Would you mind ...?* (no answer; an action is enough)

## Making suggestions

*Shall we (go for a walk)?*  
*Let's (go for a walk).*  
*Why don't we (go for a walk)?*  
*What about (going for a walk)?*  
*How about (going for a walk)?*

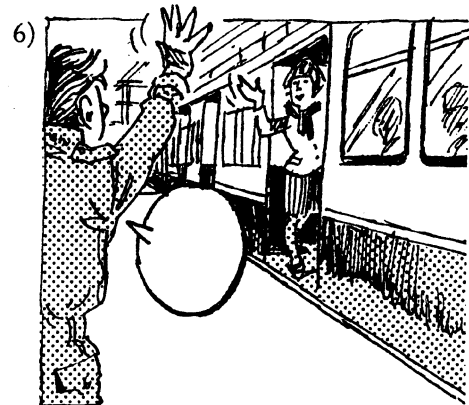
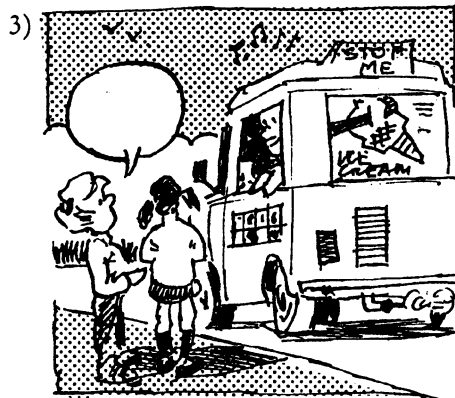
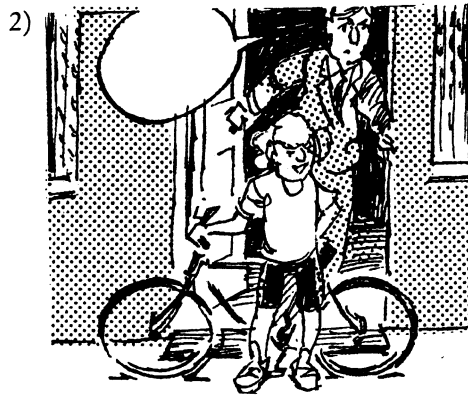
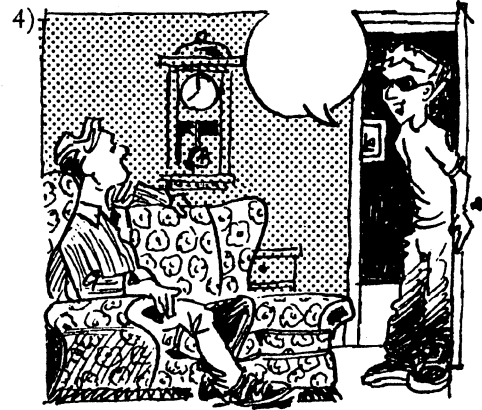
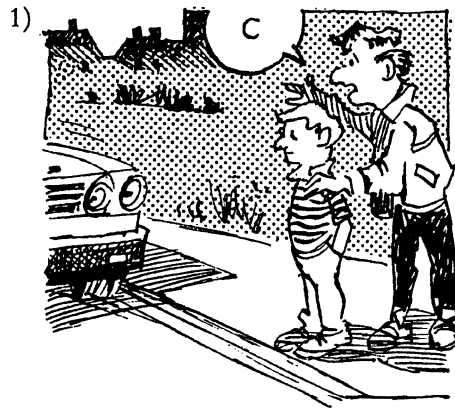
## Warning

*Be careful!*  
*Watch out!*  
*Look out!*  
*Mind out!*  
*Careful!*

*Elementary Language Practice*

**1**

Match the pictures 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) Could you open the window, please?
- b) Why don't we have an ice-cream?
- c) Look out!
- d) Don't forget to write!
- e) Would you mind moving your bike?
- f) I'll be home at 10.00.

**2**

Underline the best reply.

- a) Do you want tea or coffee?  
1) I would have tea.    2) I'd rather have tea.
- b) Could you open the door, please?  
1) Sure    2) Yes, I could open.
- c) Will you be late?  
1) I'll be home at 8.00.    2) I come home at 8.00.
- d) Do you have any ideas?  
1) We go to the cinema.    2) Let's go to the cinema.
- e) What do you want to do this evening?  
1) Shall we go for a walk?    2) Don't forget to go for a walk.
- f) Shall we go to the shops?  
1) Good idea.    2) Yes, we shall.
- g) Would you prefer a hot dog or a hamburger?  
1) I'd prefer a hamburger.    2) I prefer a hamburger.
- h) How about cycling to the beach?  
1) Yes, I love it.    2) Yes, I'd love to.

**3**

Put **one** word in each space.

- a) What ...*about*..... going for a ride on our bikes?  
b) Would you ..... opening the window?  
c) ..... you tell me the time, please?  
d) How ..... having a party?  
e) Look .....! You might fall!  
f) ..... you help me carry this, please?  
g) I ..... cake to biscuits.  
h) Don't worry. I ..... be late.  
i) Don't ..... to bring some money with you.  
j) ..... careful! That's dangerous!

**4**

Choose a word or phrase from the box to complete each sentence. Use each word or phrase once only.

Could you    How about    Please don't    I'd rather    I'll  
Let's    Look out!    Shall    Of course    Would you mind

- a) ...*Look out!*..... There's a bus coming.  
b) ..... open the door for me, please?  
c) ..... playing tennis this afternoon?  
d) Don't worry. .... be home before 10.00.  
e) 'Can you help me?' '.....'  
f) ..... carrying these books?  
g) ..... we listen to my new CD?  
h) ..... have a sandwich than an apple.  
i) I've got an idea. .... play a computer game.  
j) ..... forget to bring your workbook tomorrow.

# Unit 54

**it's September 25th, in 1999,  
on Tuesday, in January, in spring**

Calendar

## Dates

Writing

2/11/99    2 November    November 2nd    2nd Nov

- US 11/2/99

Full date: *Monday 2nd November, 1999*

Speaking

*the second of November, 1999    November the second, 1999*

- US *November second*

## Years

Writing

1999

=

Speaking

*nineteen ninety-nine*

2001

=

*two thousand and one*

## Days

Days of the week

*Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday*

*I'll see you on Monday.*

Other times

Future: *tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week, next Monday*

Past: *yesterday, the day before yesterday, last week, last Monday*

## Months

*January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August,*

*September, October, November, December*

Short forms

*Jan Feb Mar Apr Aug Sept Oct Nov Dec*

*(May, June, July do not have short forms)*

*I'll be back in March.*

Other times

Future: *next month*

Past: *last month*

## Seasons

*spring, summer, autumn, winter*

*It's lovely here in spring.*

*I'm going to Spain in the summer.*

Other times

Future: *next summer, etc.*

Past: *last winter, etc.*

**1**

Write the words as numbers.

- a) The twenty-second of October. *..22/10.....*  
 b) The first of January. ....  
 c) The nineteenth of August. ....  
 d) The fifth of June. ....  
 e) The thirtieth of September. ....  
 f) The fourteenth of May. ....  
 g) The eighth of March. ....  
 h) The thirteenth of November. ....  
 i) The fourth of April. ....  
 j) The twenty-eighth of February. ....

**2**

Write the dates as words.

- a) 21/6 The *..twenty-first of June.....*  
 b) 19/3 The .....  
 c) 2/8 The .....  
 d) 31/10 The .....  
 e) 15/2 The .....  
 f) 1/5 The .....  
 g) 20/1 The .....  
 h) 16/11 The .....  
 i) 14/9 The .....  
 j) 11/12 The .....

**3**

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- a) Today is Monday. So Wednesday is *..2.*  
 1) the day before yesterday    2) the day after tomorrow  
 3) yesterday  
 b) How do you say the year 1984? .....  
 1) nineteen eight four    2) one thousand nine hundred and eighty-four  
 3) nineteen eighty-four  
 c) What are you going to do .....  
 1) next summer    2) last summer    3) the summer  
 d) I'll talk to you again .....  
 1) yesterday    2) last month    3) tomorrow  
 e) Now it's August so next month it's .....  
 1) July    2) September    3) October  
 f) It's really cold here .....  
 1) the winter    2) last winter    3) in the winter  
 g) I haven't seen James since .....  
 1) last Monday    2) next Monday    3) tomorrow  
 h) Are you doing anything .....  
 1) at Tuesday    2) in Tuesday    3) on Tuesday

# Unit 55

*it's 7.30, it's one ten,  
at midnight, in the afternoon*

Time

## Parts of the day

*in the morning    in the afternoon    in the evening  
at night    at midday (noon)    at midnight*

## am and pm

*midnight to midday = am    1.00 am    midnight = 12.00 am  
midday to midnight = pm    4.45 pm    midday = 12.00 pm*

## 24-hour clock

*14.45 fourteen forty-five  
18.15 eighteen fifteen*

## Telling the time

Speaking

*o'clock is used for hours*

*1.00 = one o'clock    7.00 = seven o'clock*

Between 0.00 and 0.30 = *past*

*1.10 ten past one    2.15 a quarter past two  
3.25 twenty five past three    4.30 half past four*



Between 0.30 and 0.60 = *to*

*5.40 twenty to six    6.45 a quarter to seven*



Other numbers

*1.11 eleven minutes past one  
5.41 nineteen minutes to six*

Digital system

*1.10 one ten    2.15 two fifteen  
3.25 three twenty-five    4.30 four thirty  
5.40 five forty    6.45 six forty-five*

Asking the time

*What's the time?    It's three o'clock.  
What time is it?    It's ten to eight.*

We cannot say *They are six o'clock.*









**1**

Write the times as numbers.

- a) Ten to nine. .... *8.50* .....
- b) A quarter past eleven. ....
- c) Half past three. ....
- d) Twenty past five. ....
- e) A quarter to six. ....
- f) Twenty-five past eight. ....
- g) Five to five. ....
- h) Ten past eleven. ....
- i) Twenty-five to twelve. ....
- j) Twenty to nine. ....

**2**

Write the time.  
Use *past* and *to*.

- a)  ..... *half past two* .....
- b)  .....
- c)  .....
- d)  .....
- e)  .....
- f)  .....

**3**

Put one word in each space.

- a) 8.45 .... *(a) quarter* ..... *to* ..... nine.
- b) 7.00 am Seven o'clock .....
- c) 12.00 pm .....
- d) 2.30 Half .....
- e) 8.30 pm Half past eight .....
- f) 2.56 Four ..... three.
- g) 12.00 am .....
- h) 1.35 Twenty .....

# Unit 56 Consolidation 8

## 1

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) 'I really love ice-cream!' 'And I too./So do I.'
- b) 'What does Tony like/What's Tony like?' 'He's very friendly.'
- c) 'I'm sorry I'm late/Excuse me that I'm late.'
- d) It's half past three/thirty past three.
- e) I'm sorry the window is broken. It was my blame/my fault.
- f) If I were you, I am going to the doctor's/I'd go to the doctor's.
- g) Could you tell me the way to the bus station/where is the bus station?
- h) Today is 20 of November/20th November.
- i) 'What is Edinburgh like/How is Edinburgh?' 'It's an interesting city.'
- j) I need some advice. What do you think I would do/should do?

## 2

Underline the correct reply.

- a) Is it all right if I wait here?  
1) All right.    2) Sure, that's OK.    3) Yes, you are.
- b) Do you want to play basketball tonight?  
1) I'm afraid I'm not.    2) Sorry, I can't.    3) I wouldn't love to.
- c) How do you do?  
1) I do fine.    2) Very well, thanks.    3) How do you do?
- d) Shall I help you with that?  
1) Yes, you will.    2) Thanks a lot.    3) Yes, you do.
- e) Do you mind if I leave my bike here?  
1) Of course.    2) Fine thanks.    3) Go ahead.
- f) What's the time?  
1) Yes, it is.    2) Five o'clock.    3) Yes, the time is.
- g) How do you feel?  
1) Terrible!    2) Yes, I do.    3) Yes, I feel.
- h) Shall we go to the shops?  
1) Yes, we do.    2) Yes, we shall.    3) Yes, let's.

## 3

Put one word in each space.

- a) If I were..... you, I'd have a rest.
- b) What's Helen .....? Is she very friendly?
- c) Excuse me, could you tell me the ..... to the police station?
- d) ..... you like some orange juice? Or do you want some water?
- e) I've got a good idea. .... go to the park and play football.
- f) ..... forget to bring your dictionary tomorrow.
- g) 3.44: it's nearly a quarter ..... four.
- h) Would you ..... opening the window?
- i) What ..... this word mean?
- j) ..... winter was freezing, but this winter has been all right so far.

**4**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Do you feel like go/going to the theatre?
- b) Don't forget arriving/to arrive early tomorrow.
- c) I haven't seen you for ages. How do you do/How are you?
- d) That's heavy. Do/Shall I help you?
- e) The film finishes at/on midnight.
- f) Do you mind if I open/will open the window?
- g) What means this/does this mean?
- h) I don't drink coffee. I think I'd rather have/I like tea, please.
- i) Bye for now. I'll see/see you later.
- j) Are you thirsty? Would you like/Do you like a drink?

**5**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Can you close the door, please?  
**would**  
...*Would you mind closing the door, please?*.....
- b) Tell me about Paris.  
**like**  
.....
- c) May I close the door?  
**mind**  
.....
- d) Do you want to go swimming?  
**feel**  
.....
- e) Do you want some chocolate?  
**like**  
.....
- f) Let's have a party on Friday.  
**don't**  
.....

**6**

Replace the errors underlined with a correct phrase.

- a) Do you know where is the cinema? ..... *where the cinema is*.....
- b) What's your advice? What do you think I do? .....
- c) Let's meet three o'clock. .....
- d) What is the look of your English teacher? .....
- e) Why don't you going to bed early? .....
- f) 'I think you should buy it now.' 'I don't think.' .....
- g) Could you telling me the way to the city centre? .....
- h) How about you go to the theatre? .....
- i) You will go down this street, and turn left. ....
- j) What is like your friend Terry? .....

Think about grammar!

- 1 How do you show formality in your language?
- 2 Are there special words or forms which show politeness?

# Unit 57

## *in, on, at, to, into* Prepositions of place and position

**in** We use *in* when we talk about things or people inside other things or places.  
*There are some cups in that cupboard.*

**Examples** *Jack lives in Spain. We arrived in Manchester. (a city)*  
*Paul lives in Green Street. Jim sat in an armchair.*  
*I live in the country, not in the city. Sarah is ill and is in hospital.*

**on** We use *on* when we talk about one thing on the surface of another.  
*Jane put her books on the table.*

We use *on* when we talk about the cinema, radio, telephone and television.  
*What's on at the cinema?*  
*There's a good film on television tonight.*

**Examples** *It was crowded on the plane/bus/train.*  
*Our house is on this side of the street.*  
*There's a cinema on the left.*

**at** We use *at* when we talk about places and arriving at places.  
*You can buy stamps at the post office.*  
*We arrived at London Airport* Compare: *We arrived in London.*

We use *at* when we talk about position and home, work and school.

at the front, at the back, at the end  
*There's a school at the end of the street.*  
*Do you sit at the front of the class?*

at home, at work, at school  
*Mary isn't at school. She's at home.*  
*Mr King wasn't at work yesterday.*

**Examples** *The bus stopped at the train station.*  
*My sister isn't at work. She's at the doctor's.*  
*My garden is at the back of the house.*  
*Wait for me at the crossroads.*

**to**

We use *to* with verbs of movement.  
*Last night we went to the cinema.*

**Examples**

*I went to the cinema last night.*  
*Are you coming to the party?*  
*David brought his dog to school.*  
*Tina took her sister to the circus.*

- We do not use *to* with *home*.      *I have to go home now.*
- We do not use *to* with *here* or *there*.      *Sam is coming here tomorrow.*

**into**

We use *into* to express movement from one place to an enclosed area.  
*Tom ran into the room and sat down.*  
*The children climbed into the car.*  
*I went into the shop.*

**1**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Jim and Maria have bought a house at/in the country.
- b) The cupboard is in/at the room, on the left.
- c) What have you got in/on your bag?
- d) George walked at/into the room and sat down.
- e) Please put your books at/on my desk.
- f) Will you be in/at home this evening?
- g) Clare lives at/in the end of the street.
- h) Are you going at/to school tomorrow?
- i) Come on! Get on/in your bike.
- j) I saw your mum in/on the television.

**2**

Put *at* or *to* in each space.

- a) I'll be ...~~at~~.... the station at 7.30.
- b) Have you ever been ..... Rome?
- c) You can buy batteries ..... the corner shop.
- d) Don't forget to send a postcard ..... the neighbours.
- e) Do you usually walk ..... school?
- f) Helen flew ..... New York to visit her penfriend.
- g) David is studying ..... university.
- h) There's a phone ..... the end of the corridor.
- i) Tony was sent ..... the head teacher's office.
- j) We arrived ..... our hotel just before midnight.

Elementary Language Practice

**3**

Complete each sentence with *in* or *at*.

- a) Is there any milk ...*in*..... the fridge?
- b) Is Sam ..... the basketball team?
- c) I'll wait for you ..... the bus-stop.
- d) I've lived ..... this city for more than ten years.
- e) Paolo had an operation and is still ..... hospital.
- f) John's house is ..... the corner of the street.
- g) Mary is ..... work at the moment, but she'll be home soon.
- h) What's on ..... the cinema this week?
- i) Nick lives ..... Italy at the moment.
- j) Lily always sits ..... the back of the class.

**4**

Put **one** word in each space.

- a) Have you heard? Pat is ...*in*..... hospital at the moment.
- b) Excuse me, is George ..... home?
- c) Ann and Sue went to Prague ..... the bus.
- d) I liked the scene with the dog ..... the end of the film.
- e) Jean has bought a cottage ..... the country.
- f) Is Katerina ..... school today?
- g) Peter put his suitcase ..... the seat next to him.
- h) Nick ran ..... the room and shut the door with a bang.
- i) Carmen took her pet mouse ..... school.
- j) There are some good pictures ..... this book.

**5**

Put *in* or *on* in each sentence.

- a) Kate lives ...*in*..... the house at the end of the street.
- b) The house is not ..... this side of the street.
- c) Kate's flat is ..... the fifth floor.
- d) You can go up to the fifth floor ..... a lift.
- e) I visited her last week because there was a good film ..... television.
- f) We sat ..... the living-room and watched it and ate pizza.
- g) Kate put her pizza ..... a small table and her dog ate it!
- h) After that we put the dog ..... the bedroom.

**6**

Put *at* or *to* in each sentence, or leave the space blank.

- a) Have you ever been ...*to*..... Rome?
- b) Why don't we walk ..... the city centre?
- c) When we arrived ..... the hotel, it was late.
- d) Have you been ..... here before?
- e) Was Helen ..... school yesterday?
- f) I'll meet you ..... the bus station.
- g) I'm going home ..... now. I'll see you later.
- h) Are you going ..... the basketball match tomorrow?

# Unit 58

**inside, outside,  
in, out, next to,  
near, opposite,  
out of, in front of,  
behind**

Prepositions and adverbials of place  
and position

## **inside**

Emphasizes the idea of containing.

*There was nobody inside the burning house.*

## **outside**

*Outside* is the opposite of *inside*.

*There was someone standing outside the classroom.*

We can use *inside* and *outside* without an object.

*Helen was standing outside.*

*Is there anyone inside?*

## **in and out with no object**

*Tom is out. Tom has gone out.* (not at home)

*Jill is in.* (at home)

## **next to**

*Next to* means 'exactly at the side of'.

*Jim sits next to Tom.*

## **near**

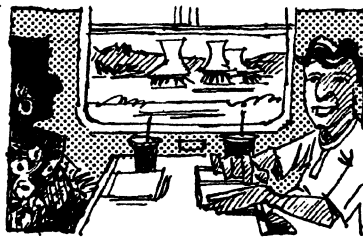
*Near* means the same as *close to*.

*Ahmet's house is near the sports centre.*

## **opposite**

*Opposite* means the same as 'on the other side of a space'.

*There is a school opposite my house.*



*The boy is sitting opposite  
his mother.*

Elementary Language Practice

**out of**

We can use *out of* with verbs of movement.  
*Helen ran out of* the room.

**in front of**

*In front of* means 'before someone or something in a line or queue'.  
*Jack was in front of me.*  
*Helen sits in front of me.*



*The motorbike is in front of the car.*

**behind**

*Behind* means 'after someone or something in a line or queue'.  
*David was behind me.*    *Anna sits behind me.*

**1**

Tick the best sentence.

- a) 1) Alan is in the garden. He is out.  
2) Alan is in the garden. He is outside. ✓
- b) 1) There's nothing inside.  
2) There's nothing in.
- c) 1) Is Tim in his room?  
2) Is Tim inside his room?
- d) 1) The supermarket is next the cinema.  
2) The supermarket is opposite the cinema.
- e) 1) Cristina sits near of Bill.  
2) Cristina sits next to Bill.

**2**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Is Jack in/into at the moment?
- b) There is a shop next to/opposite our house, on the other side of the road.
- c) Someone is waiting outside/out.
- d) Kate was sitting in front of me/outside me on the bus.
- e) Excuse me, is there a post office near/next to here?
- f) The children ran out of/at the classroom.
- g) David sits next to/opposite me, so I share his book.
- h) I opened the parcel, but there was nothing inside/in.
- i) I went to see Lidia, but she was out/outside.
- j) There is a man next to/behind us. He is following us.



**3**  
Choose the correct word.

- a) Look! There's someone ..2. the garden.  
1) on 2) in 3) inside
- b) I like sitting ..... a comfortable armchair.  
1) inside 2) in 3) at
- c) Take the first turning ..... the left.  
1) on 2) opposite 3) at
- d) Jane isn't here at the moment. She's .....  
1) on 2) in 3) out
- e) Is there anything good ..... television tonight?  
1) near 2) in 3) on
- f) Peter likes lying ..... the floor.  
1) on 2) at 3) near
- g) When you arrive ..... Paris, phone me.  
1) in 2) into 3) inside
- h) Who sits next ..... Sam?  
1) — 2) at 3) to
- i) What time do we go ..... home?  
1) — 2) to 3) at
- j) Can you wait ..... please?  
1) out 2) out of 3) outside

**4**  
Put one word in each space.

- a) When I looked in the box, there was nothing ....*inside*.....
- b) There was a big red bus ..... front of us.
- c) Sorry, but Ann has gone ..... Can I take a message?
- d) Suddenly George ran ..... of the room.
- e) We can't play ..... because it's raining heavily.
- f) The woman ..... me was pushing my back.
- g) Who sits ..... to Paul?
- h) Excuse me, is there a bank ..... here?

**5**  
Put a word or phrase in the space which is the opposite of the word or phrase underlined.

- a) There was an empty desk in front of Tina. ....*behind*.....
- b) David is out. He's not at home. ....
- c) A lot of people were waiting outside the bank. ....
- d) My house is a long way from the railway station. ....
- e) I live on the same side of the road as the supermarket. ....
- f) Is Harry in? A policeman wants to talk to him. ....
- g) Who sits behind you in the English class? ....
- h) Suddenly Misha ran into the room. ....

# Unit 59

**a/an, the**      Articles

## Indefinite and definite

*There was a book on the desk.*  
We do not have any information about this book.      (indefinite)

*Where's the book with the answers?*  
We know something about this book.      (definite)

## Indefinite article: a/an

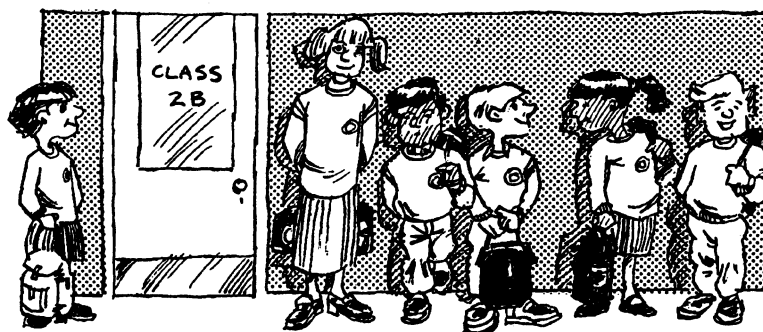
- with general descriptions  
*A footballer is a person who plays football.*  
*An apple is a type of fruit.*
- with a person's job  
*Mary is a doctor.*  
*I'm an engineer.*
- with a person's character or status  
*Helen is a genius!*  
*Paul is a star!*

## Definite article: the

We use *the*:

- with unique objects and known references  
*The moon circles around the earth.* (There is only one moon.)  
*The Tower of London is very old.* (There is only one.)  
*Have you got the paper?* (We know which paper and which shop we are talking about.)  
*I'm going to the shop.*
- with nationalities and other groups of people  
*The Spanish love dancing.*  
*The Beatles were a famous pop group.*
- with adjectives to describe groups of people  
*Jane has a job helping the poor.*  
*The rich usually live in big houses.*  
*The old need our help.*
- with collective nouns  
*Call the police!*  
*The government is very unpopular.*

- with geographical features  
Rivers *the Loire, the Rhine*  
Oceans *the Atlantic, the Pacific*  
Seas *the Mediterranean, the Red Sea*  
Deserts *the Sahara, the Gobi*
- with musical instruments  
*Do you play the violin?*  
*Can you play the piano?*
- with superlatives  
*This is the biggest picture in the shop.*  
*Steven is the shortest in his family.*  
*The cheetah is the fastest mammal in the world.*



*Carol is the tallest student in the class.*

- See Unit 76 Superlatives.

**1**

Put *a/an*, or *the*  
in each space.

- What's *the* matter? Are you all right?
- Kate has bought ..... new car.
- Some people think that ..... moon is made of cheese!
- I'm collecting money for ..... poor.
- Brian hasn't found ..... job yet.
- I've never seen ..... elephant.
- Can you play ..... guitar?
- Helen is ..... idiot!
- ..... longest bridge in Europe is in Portugal.
- Don't forget to turn off ..... television.

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Jane teaches English.  
**teacher**  
...*Jane is an English teacher.*.....
- b) There aren't any buses after this one.  
**last**  
.....
- c) Have you seen today's paper?  
**the**  
.....
- d) English people like tea.  
**the**  
.....
- e) Telescopes help you to see things that are far away.  
**a**  
.....
- f) Ann is a team-member.  
**of**  
.....
- g) The road finishes here.  
**end of**  
.....
- h) Tim studies at university.  
**student**  
.....
- i) We should all help poor people.  
**the**  
.....
- j) How idiotic you are!  
**idiot**  
.....

**3**

Complete each sentence with *a/an* and *the*.

- a) There's ...*a*..... knife in ...*the*... second drawer.
- b) I'm going to ..... baker's to buy ..... loaf.
- c) ..... *Rolling Stones* are ..... very old rock group.
- d) There's ..... cat in ..... garden!
- e) David is ..... doctor at ..... local hospital.
- f) We missed ..... beginning of ..... lovely film.
- g) Have you ever looked at ..... moon through ..... telescope?
- h) Mary plays ..... violin in ..... quartet.
- i) It's ..... long time before ..... train arrives.
- j) I saw ..... interesting play at ..... theatre last week.

# Unit 60

'Zero article'      Articles

We do not always use *a/an* or *the* in front of nouns. We call this 'zero article'.

## General statements

*Cars are not allowed to park here.*  
*Teachers work very hard.*

## Uncountables

*Sugar is bad for you.*  
*Money isn't the most important thing in life!*

## Abstract ideas

*Love makes the world go round.*  
*War is a terrible thing.*

Note that abstract words can be used in a definite way.  
*The war ended two years later.*

## Names of food and drink

*I usually drink milk.*  
*I don't like tea.*  
*I love eating chocolate.*

## Languages

*Do you speak Turkish?*  
*I'm learning Spanish.*

## Materials

*This coat is made of plastic and leather.*  
*I'm going to put some wood on the fire.*

## Buildings

*Sue is in prison.*                      (She committed a crime.)  
*Richard is in hospital.*              (He's ill.)

Also: bed, class, school, college, university

When we talk about the building only, we use an article.

*Paul works at the prison.*              (He's not a prisoner.)

Note that we also think of work as a place.

*Sam is at work.*

Elementary Language Practice

We also use the zero article with:

**Countries, states and cities**

*Paolo comes from Italy.  
I live in England.  
My favourite European city is Tarragona.*

Countries which are plural or a group use the definite article *the*.  
*the Netherlands the United States  
the United Arab Emirates*

**Streets**

*I bought these trousers from a shop in Green Street.  
Which street do you live in?*

**Geographical features**

We use the zero article with regions, lakes, mountains and islands.  
*We visited Lake Como. It's in Northern Italy.  
Diana climbed Mont Blanc in record time.  
James spent his holidays on Rhodes.*

**Transport**

We use the zero article with *by* for general forms of transport.  
*We went there by train. I love travelling by boat.*  
But: *on foot*  
*It was quicker to go on foot.*



**1**  
Choose the correct word or space underlined in each sentence.

- a) Do you like an/ orange juice?
- b) Tom has got a/ new leather coat.
- c) Kate teaches at a/ school in Leeds.
- d) Have you ever been to the/ Italy?
- e) The/ Chinese have a very difficult language.
- f) The/ love is a wonderful thing!
- g) I'm tired. It's time to go to the/ bed.
- h) Could you pass the/ sugar, please?
- i) Harry comes from the/ USA.
- j) We went to Scotland by a/ car.

**2**

Put *a/an* or *the* in each space, or leave the space blank.

- a) Where's ...*the*... milk? I thought you bought some.
- b) ..... students must not leave their bags here.
- c) Paul went to ..... prison for stealing two cars.
- d) Is this chair made of ..... wood?
- e) It's much quicker on ..... foot.
- f) I wonder what life was like in ..... ancient Rome.
- g) A large crowd welcomed ..... President of the USA.
- h) ..... smoking is not allowed in the dining-room.
- i) Do you want ..... sugar in your tea?
- j) There has been a fire at ..... prison.

**3**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Sue isn't up yet.  
**bed**  
...*Sue is still in bed*.....
- b) We walked to the city centre.  
**foot**  
.....
- c) David wears plastic glasses.  
**made of**  
.....
- d) George came here on the bus.  
**by**  
.....
- e) Naomi is a French speaker.  
**speaks**  
.....
- f) Martin is a prisoner.  
**prison**  
.....
- g) I'm not a tea drinker.  
**drink**  
.....
- h) Carlos is Spanish.  
**Spain**  
.....
- i) Ann flew to New York.  
**plane**  
.....
- j) Marie comes from France.  
**is**  
.....

# Unit 61

***I, me, mine***    Pronouns 1  
***this, that***  
***one, ones***

## Subject pronouns

<i>I</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>we</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>they</i>
	<i>it</i>	

These come before the main verb:

*I think it's awful.*  
*Do you like this film?*

## Object pronouns

<i>me</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>us</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>them</i>
	<i>it</i>	

These come after the main verb:

*I sent them a letter.*  
*Ellen told us the answer.*

## Possessive pronouns

<i>mine</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>ours</i>
<i>yours</i>	<i>hers</i>	<i>theirs</i>
	<i>(its)</i>	

(*its* is not often used)

*Is this pen yours or mine?*

- No apostrophe before *s* with possessive pronouns.

## ***this* and *that***

singular	<i>this</i>	<i>that</i>
plural	<i>these</i>	<i>those</i>

*What's this?*    *I'd like those, please.*

## With nouns

*These shoes are nice.*    *Is that blue car yours?*

## ***one/ones***

*I like that one.*  
*I don't like the blue ones.*  
*'Did you buy a loaf?' 'I bought a small one.'*  
*That was a nice biscuit. Can I have another one?*



**1**

Put *this, that, these, those, one* or *ones* in each space.

- a) I've just found ..... *this* ..... watch. Is it yours?
- b) There are a lot of bags here. Which ..... is yours?
- c) Do you like ..... houses at the end of the street?
- d) Anna, ..... is my friend Sam. Have you met before?
- e) Have one of ..... chocolates. They're my favourite!
- f) 'What's .....?' 'What?' 'The animal over there.'
- g) Who was ..... girl I saw you with last night?
- h) I like the black trousers, but I don't like the green .....
- i) Did you enjoy that ice-cream? Would you like another .....?
- j) Here, take ..... letters and post them for me, please.

**2**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Tony gave we/(us) a lift.
- b) Is this bag your/yours?
- c) Tina and Mike say that we can borrow theirs/they.
- d) Could you pass me that/those paper?
- e) Is it your turn, or is it my/mine?
- f) Do this/these trees belong to you?
- g) Paula wants you to help she/her.
- h) Excuse me, but this is my/mine seat.
- i) Is this/these your book?
- j) Shall we phone them/they now?

**3**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) Is this your bike?  
Is this bike ..... *yours* .....
- b) That house belongs to me.  
That house is .....
- c) Paul likes Jane. They're friends.  
Paul and Jane are friends. He likes .....
- d) I want to know the time.  
Can you tell ..... the time, please.
- e) We own this car.  
This car is .....
- f) I invited John to my house for a talk.  
I wanted to talk to John so I invited ..... to my house.
- g) Jane has arrived. Those are her suitcases.  
Jane has arrived. Those suitcases are .....
- h) Sam stayed in London because he liked the clubs there.  
Sam stayed in London because he liked ..... clubs.
- i) Can you lend a pen to Ellen? She needs one.  
Ellen needs a pen. Can you lend ..... one?
- j) I like your shoes. They're nice.  
Your shoes are nice. I like .....

# Unit 62

**someone, anybody, everything, none, etc.** Pronouns 2

<b>someone/ somebody</b>	For an unknown person <i>Someone/Somebody is knocking at the door.</i>
<b>something</b>	For an unknown thing <i>Something is wrong!</i>
<b>anyone/ anybody</b>	For questions and negatives <i>Is anyone/anybody going to help me?</i> <i>There isn't anyone/anybody here.</i>
<b>anything</b>	For questions and negatives <i>Is there anything in the box?</i>
<b>no one/nobody</b>	A negative meaning. We do not use <i>not</i> . <i>I'm sure that no one/nobody saw me.</i>
<b>none</b>	<i>None</i> means 'not one'. We do not use <i>not</i> . <i>Can I have a biscuit? There are none left.</i> <i>Can I have some milk? There is none left.</i>
<b>none of</b>	We usually use a singular verb. <i>None of the children was tired.</i>
<b>nothing</b>	A negative meaning. We do not use <i>not</i> . <i>I pressed the button, but nothing happened.</i>
<b>everyone, everybody</b>	All the people. We use a singular verb. <i>Everyone knows the answer.</i>
<b>everything</b>	All the things. We use a singular verb. <i>Everything is beautiful.</i>

**1**

Complete each sentence with a pronoun beginning *some-*, *any-*, *no-* or *every-*.

- a) Can I ask you *...something...*?
- b) ..... has gone wrong today! It's been terrible!
- c) ..... has taken my bike, and I'm going to find out who!
- d) There is ..... nicer than a warm bath.
- e) Does ..... here have a pen I could borrow?
- f) I feel so unhappy! ..... loves me!
- g) ....., somewhere, wants a phone call from you!
- h) ..... I have is yours!

**2**

Replace the underlined words with **one** word.

- a) Not one of the people in the room welcomed Peter. ...None.....
- b) All the people in the room clapped loudly. .....
- c) Not one of the people I asked knew the way. .....
- d) An unknown person has broken a window in the classroom. .....
- e) Does one of the people here know the time? .....
- f) Not one person laughed at the head teacher's joke. .....
- g) There isn't one single thing to eat. .....
- h) All the things Roger planned went badly wrong. .....
- i) There's a person at the door. .....
- j) Jim owns all the things in this room. .....

**3**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) There isn't anyone at home.  
**no one**  
...*There is no one at home.*.....
- b) We all know that.  
**everyone**  
.....
- c) There is nothing to do.  
**anything**  
.....
- d) The box was empty.  
**nothing**  
.....
- e) There aren't any left.  
**none**  
.....
- f) I met a person who knows you.  
**somebody**  
.....
- g) I didn't eat anything.  
**nothing**  
.....
- h) Do you know any people in this town?  
**anybody**  
.....

# Unit 63 Consolidation 9

## 1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Tom wasn't to/in/at work today. Is he ill?
- b) There was a queue in the street to/into/outside the cinema.
- c) Are you going at/to/in school tomorrow?
- d) Mario took his pet snake to/at/in his English class.
- e) A new music shop has opened to/in/into the town centre.
- f) There's a good film at/in/to the Arts Cinema this week.
- g) Jane is at/out/to, but she'll be home later.
- h) Cem opened the box, but there was nothing at/inside/to.

## 2

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Have you got a/one bike?
- b) Cindy is a/an young American.
- c) Sorry I'm late. I missed a/the bus.
- d) Excuse me, is there a/the cinema near here?
- e) Ann's house is at a/the end of the street.
- f) Once upon a/the time, there were three bears.
- g) Can you tell me a/the time please?
- h) I'm sorry, but I could only buy a/one ticket for the match.

## 3

Put *a/an* or *the* in each space.

- a) *...The...* Nile is one of *...the...* longest rivers in *...the...* world.
- b) Kate is ..... genius and always knows all ..... answers.
- c) Paul lives in ..... old house on ..... small island.
- d) Rita had ..... job as ..... engineer in ..... international company.
- e) Suddenly there was ..... strange noise from ..... kitchen.
- f) If you go to ..... supermarket, can you buy me ..... packet of biscuits?
- g) There's ..... burglar in ..... garden! Call ..... police!
- h) John first crossed ..... Atlantic on ..... cruise-ship.

## 4

Put *the* in each space, or leave the space blank.

- a) All we are saying is give ..... peace a chance.
- b) ..... Helen usually eats ..... fish, not ..... meat.
- c) ..... bikes are a clean and healthy form of ..... transport.
- d) Most of ..... people in ..... world enjoy ..... music.
- e) I caught ..... first bus and arrived early at ..... airport.
- f) ..... young usually enjoy ..... sport.
- g) Our house is in ..... Hilton Road.
- h) We learned ..... Spanish by listening to ..... radio.

**5**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) There is nothing in the cupboard.  
**isn't**  
...*There isn't anything in the cupboard.*.....
- b) All the people enjoyed the party.  
**everyone**  
.....
- c) Everyone was at home.  
**out**  
.....
- d) There is a person in the garden.  
**someone**  
.....
- e) I promise to say nothing.  
**won't**  
.....
- f) There was no one on the bus.  
**wasn't**  
.....

**6**

Put **one** suitable word in each space.

- a) The dog has lost .....*its*..... collar.
- b) Has anyone seen ..... wallet? I think I've lost it.
- c) My pencil broke so I borrowed ..... from a friend.
- d) Jo and Steve have got two children. .... names are Ian and Megan.
- e) This book is ..... It's got my name on it.
- f) We live in this house. It's .....
- g) This bike is mine and ..... one is Jim's.
- h) Anna says that this bag is ....., not Maria's.

**7**

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) The love makes world go round!      ..*Love makes the world go round.*.....
- b) Help! Call police!      .....
- c) Kate enjoyed her holiday at Turkey.      .....
- d) Have you met mine brother?      .....
- e) No one of the questions was easy.      .....
- f) My sister is architect.      .....
- g) Those bags are there's.      .....
- h) Let's go cinema tonight.      .....
- i) It's quicker to go to the station by foot.      .....
- j) Everything I wrote were wrong.      .....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Compare the uses of the articles with articles in your own language. What mistakes do you usually make?
- 2 Revise the differences between *my/mine, your/yours, her/hers* etc. Remember that possessive pronouns, e.g. *yours, hers*, have no apostrophe.
- 3 Check the uses of *at, in* and *to*. Does your language have more than one preposition for these meanings?

# Unit 64

***She said she was leaving at six.***

Reported speech

***She said she had left at six.***

Past perfect

## What is reported speech?

*'I'm leaving at six,' she said.*

This is direct speech, or the words that we hear.

*She said that she was leaving at six.*

*She said she was leaving at six.*

This is indirect or reported speech. Someone tells us what she said.

## Tense changes

- Present simple to past simple

*'Tim wants some coffee.'*

*He said (that) Tim wanted some coffee.*

*'Tim is late.'*

*He said (that) Tim was late.*

- Present continuous to past continuous

*'I'm washing my hair.'*

*She said (that) she was washing her hair.*

- Present perfect to past perfect

*'Helen has lost her wallet.'*

*He said (that) Helen had lost her wallet.*

*will to would*

*'I'll be late.'*

*She said (that) she would be late.*

- Past simple to past perfect

*'Kate took my keys.'*

*He said (that) Kate had taken his keys.*

## Past perfect

Forming the past perfect: *had + past participle*

<i>I had started</i>	<i>he had started</i>	<i>we had started</i>
<i>I'd started</i>	<i>he'd started</i>	<i>we'd started</i>
<i>you had started</i>	<i>she had started</i>	<i>they had started</i>
<i>you'd started</i>	<i>she'd started</i>	<i>they'd started</i>
	<i>it had started</i>	
	<i>it'd started</i>	

- See *Intermediate Language Practice* Unit 5 for more on the past perfect.
- Words which describe time and place change in reported speech. See *Intermediate Language Practice* Units 10 and 11 for more about reported speech.

**1**  
Match the speech bubbles 1) to 6) with the sentences a) to f).



- a) Anna said that she was leaving the group. .... *f.*
- b) Sue said that she was very happy! .....
- c) Maria said that she enjoyed singing. ....
- d) Olga said that she would give an interview later. ....
- e) Tina said that she had got married on Monday! .....
- f) Helen said that she had met lots of people. ....

**2**  
Write each sentence as direct speech.

- a) She said that she was leaving at six. .... *'I'm leaving at six.'*..... she said.
- b) He said Peter often went fishing. .... he said.
- c) She said she would be back later. .... she said.
- d) I said that I had just seen Mark. .... I said.
- e) Alan said that they had left at 6.00. .... Alan said.
- f) Helen said that she was working. .... Helen said.
- g) I said that we were late. .... I said.
- h) He said he would phone back. .... he said.
- i) David said that he felt all right. .... David said.
- j) She said she loved ice-cream. .... she said.

**3**  
Write each sentence as reported speech.

- a) 'I'm leaving,' she said. She said ..... *(that) she was leaving.*.....
- b) 'I saw the film on Monday,' Tom said. Tom said .....
- c) 'I've missed the bus,' Maria said. Maria said .....
- d) 'We live in Marsden Street,' they said. They said .....
- e) 'I'll phone at 6.00,' Anna said. Anna said .....
- f) 'I'm having a good time,' said Carol. Carol said .....
- g) 'We're arriving at 9.00,' they said. They said .....
- h) 'I forgot to do my work,' said Al. Al said .....
- i) 'I'm wrong,' he said. He said .....
- j) 'I've hurt my arm,' said Harry. Harry said .....

# Unit 65

## Passive 1

### Present simple passive

<i>is started</i>	<i>are started</i>	(regular)
<i>is eaten</i>	<i>are eaten</i>	(irregular)

### will passive

<i>will be started</i>	(regular)
<i>will be eaten</i>	(irregular)

### Present perfect passive

<i>has been started</i>	<i>have been started</i>	(regular)
<i>has been eaten</i>	<i>have been eaten</i>	(irregular)

### Past simple passive

<i>was started</i>	<i>were started</i>	(regular)
<i>was eaten</i>	<i>were eaten</i>	(irregular)

### Examples

#### Present simple

Active *Archaeologists often discover ancient coins.*

Passive *Ancient coins are often discovered by archaeologists.*

#### will

Active *They will finish the new road next year.*

Passive *The new road will be finished next year.*

#### Present perfect

Active *Your cat has eaten my pet mouse!*

Passive *My pet mouse has been eaten by your cat!*

#### Past simple

Active *The whole class wrote the play.*

Passive *The play was written by the whole class.*

### Uses

When we make an active sentence passive, the object becomes the subject. We do this when we want to put information at the beginning of the sentence because it is more important.

*Many valuable things are left on underground trains by tourists.*  
*Many valuable things* is important.

*Tourists leave many valuable things on underground trains.*  
*Tourists* is important.

- We use the passive more in writing and in formal speech.



**1**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Last year more than a million cars were stolen/are stolen.
- b) Helen has decided/has been decided to visit China.
- c) America visited/was visited by the Vikings.
- d) The police have not found/have not been found the missing dog.
- e) More interesting facts are discovered/are discovering every year.
- f) The basketball team is chosen/chooses by the captain.
- g) The next meeting will hold/will be held on 14 December.
- h) Two men were painted/were painting the walls.

**2**

Complete each sentence in the passive.

- a) The police arrested fifteen people.  
Fifteen people ..... were arrested ..... by the police.
- b) They have found little Jimmy safe and well.  
Little Jimmy ..... safe and well.
- c) We plant hundreds of trees every year.  
Hundreds of trees ..... every year.
- d) We will sell most tickets on the day of the match.  
Most tickets ..... on the day of the match.
- e) They took the injured people to hospital.  
The injured people ..... to hospital.
- f) They have discovered a new planet.  
A new planet .....
- g) They grow coffee in Brazil.  
Coffee ..... in Brazil.
- h) A famous journalist wrote the book.  
The book ..... by a famous journalist.

**3**

Rewrite each sentence in the passive. Start each sentence with the words underlined.

- a) They built the bridge in 1996.  
..... The bridge was built in 1996 .....
- b) A dog has eaten my sandwich!  
.....
- c) They'll deliver the letter tomorrow.  
.....
- d) They have cancelled our train.  
.....
- e) One of the students broke a window in the classroom.  
.....
- f) People drink millions of cans of soft drinks every day!  
.....
- g) They'll decorate your room.  
.....
- h) Helen has won the first prize.  
.....

# Unit 66

Passive 2 Agent

**With the agent  
by**

The agent is the person or thing that does the action.

*Peter was kidnapped by aliens from another galaxy.*

In this sentence the agent = aliens.

**With the agent  
with**

The instrument is the thing used to do the action.

*The door was opened with a special key.*

In this sentence the instrument = a special key.

- An agent is not always necessary.

**Not known**

*The window was broken last night.*

We do not know who did it.

**Not important**

*The castle was built in the 18th century.*

We are interested in the date, but not in the architect.

**Obvious**

*The money was stolen.*

We know that robbers, thieves, etc. steal things.

*The money was stolen by robbers wearing masks.*

We are interested in who did the stealing.

**Impersonal**

*The match has been cancelled.*

The person or people who decided to cancel the match are not named.

**Careful!**

Always passive

*Jim was born in Australia.*



- What is passive in your language but not in English?

**1**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use *with* or *by*.

- a) A friend gave Tina a lift to school.  
Tina *...was given a lift to school by a friend.....*
- b) Tom Smooth will play the part of *Hamlet*.  
The part of *Hamlet* .....
- c) They used a screwdriver to open the window.  
The window .....
- d) Our dog bites lots of people.  
Lots of people .....
- e) A ball broke the classroom window.  
The classroom window .....
- f) A Japanese millionaire bought the painting.  
The painting .....

**2**

Rewrite each sentence in the passive. Do not use the words underlined.

- a) Workers build thousands of new houses every year.  
*...Thousands of new homes are built every year.....*
- b) The two teams will play the match on Sunday.  
.....
- c) Nowadays people cut down many trees for no reason.  
.....
- d) The police asked Jim to go to the police station.  
.....
- e) Someone has stolen my bike.  
.....
- f) People delivered our new washing-machine yesterday.  
.....

**3**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) Hundreds of people visit the castle every year.  
The castle *..... is visited every year by hundreds of people.....*
- b) Three masked men kidnapped the bank manager.  
The bank manager .....
- c) Howard Carter discovered the tomb of Tutankhamun in 1922.  
The tomb .....
- d) Millions of people enjoy Susan's books.  
Susan's books .....
- e) Heavy traffic causes a lot of pollution.  
A lot of pollution .....
- f) Everyone has decided to have another meeting on Wednesday.  
It .....

# Unit 67

## *Sit down! Don't talk!* Imperatives

### Situations

We use imperatives to:

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1) give orders            | <i>Sit here, please. ...</i>            |
| 2) give instructions      | <i>Press this button. ....</i>          |
| 3) give directions        | <i>Take the first on the left. ....</i> |
| 4) make informal requests | <i>Lend me your pen. ....</i>           |
| 5) give informal advice   | <i>Buy the red one. ....</i>            |

Match the pictures with the situations above.



### Examples

<i>Stop!</i>	<i>Listen!</i>
<i>Don't stop!</i>	<i>Don't listen!</i>

### Direction and place

<i>Go away!</i>	<i>Come back!</i>
<i>Sit down!</i>	<i>Stand up!</i>
<i>Come here!</i>	<i>Go over there!</i>

**1**

Write an instruction for each situation. Use a verb from the box.

close come stop open sit lend take turn off

- a) A young child is reading in bed late at night. His mother says to him:  
...*Turn off the light!*.....
- b) A man's dog is running away. The man shouts at the dog:  
.....
- c) It is the first class of the day and the students have their books on their tables. The teacher says:  
.....
- d) The front door of the house is open. The father says to his son:  
.....
- e) Lots of students are standing up in a class. The teacher says:  
.....
- f) You need to borrow a pen. You say to your friend:  
.....
- g) You are talking to your friend in class. The teacher says:  
.....
- h) Your friend asks where the disco is. You know it's in the next street on the left. You say:  
.....

**2**

Write the opposite.

- a) Stand up! .....*Sit down!*.....
- b) Go away! .....
- c) Turn on the light! .....
- d) Start work! .....
- e) Open the window! .....
- f) Go to sleep! .....
- g) Pull the door! .....
- h) Get off the bus! .....

**3**

Put one word in each space.

- a) Please .....*sit*..... down. I want to begin the lesson.
- b) ..... I want you to stay.
- c) ..... me a pencil, please. I've broken mine.
- d) I don't want to talk to you! Please ..... away .
- e) ..... this one. It's not very expensive.
- f) It's easy to find. .... along this road, and then turn left.
- g) ..... here. I want to have a word with you.
- h) ..... the front of the oven! It's hot, and you'll burn yourself.
- i) Using the Easywriter is easy. Just ..... it on, and it's ready.
- j) ..... for me. I'll be a long time.

# Unit 68

## Swimming is great! Gerunds

### Gerund

The gerund is the noun form of the verb, ending in *-ing*. We can use it as a subject or an object.

#### Subject

*Flying is exciting!*      *Cycling is good exercise.*

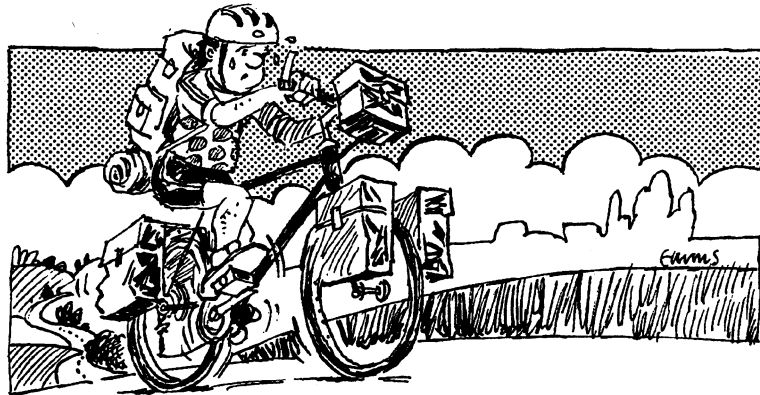
#### Object

*Do you like flying?*      *Are you interested in cycling?*

Verb	Gerund	Verb	Gerund
<i>read</i>	<i>reading</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>eating</i>
<i>run</i>	<i>running</i>	<i>swim</i>	<i>swimming</i>
<i>cycle</i>	<i>cycling</i>	<i>write</i>	<i>writing</i>
<i>play</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>pray</i>	<i>praying</i>
<i>cry</i>	<i>crying</i>	<i>fly</i>	<i>flying</i>

### Examples

*Cycling is not allowed on the pavement.*  
*Speaking is forbidden during the examination.*  
*Do you like camping?*  
*I love studying!*  
*I can't stand getting up early.*



*Cycling is excellent exercise.*

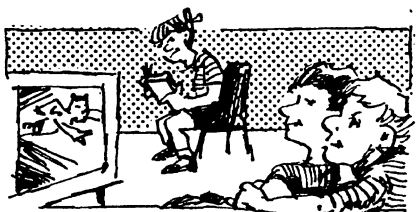
**1**  
Complete the sentence for each picture.



a) Tim likes ..... *swimming* .....



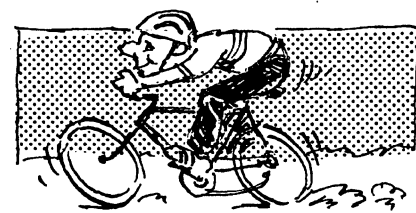
d) Tina likes .....



b) Helen can't stand .....



e) Mark doesn't like .....



c) Peter loves .....



f) Lisa is interested in .....

**2**  
Complete each sentence with a gerund (-ing). Use the verb in brackets.

- a) Kate is good at (run) ... *running* .....
- b) (take) ..... a long walk is relaxing.
- c) What do you think of (collect) ..... stamps?.
- d) (eat) ..... too much isn't healthy.
- e) All my friends like (play) ..... basketball.
- f) (shout) ..... at people is rude!
- g) Is Harry interested in (sail) ..... ?
- h) (cross) ..... the road here is dangerous.
- i) Do you feel like (go) ..... to the cinema?
- j) (jog) ..... is good for you.

**3**  
Rewrite each sentence so that it starts with a gerund (-ing).

- a) It's tiring to study late at night.      *... Studying late at night is tiring.* .....
- b) It's hard to get up early.      .....
- c) It takes time to learn a language.      .....
- d) You are forbidden to park here.      .....
- e) It's interesting to visit other countries.      .....
- f) You are not allowed to talk.      .....
- g) It's not necessary to book a table.      .....
- h) It's wrong to copy other people!      .....
- i) It's relaxing to listen to music.      .....
- j) You are not allowed to smoke.      .....

# Unit 69

***It's, they're,*** Contractions  
***I'm, I've,***  
***he's, she's***

## Contractions

When we speak we often shorten words like *am, are, have, has* in verb forms (auxiliary or 'helping' verbs). When we write these short forms (contractions) we put an apostrophe (') to show that letters are missing.

<i>be</i>	<i>I am</i>	<i>you are</i>	<i>he is</i>	<i>she is</i>	<i>it is</i>	<i>we are</i>	<i>they are</i>
	<i>I'm</i>	<i>you're</i>	<i>he's</i>	<i>she's</i>	<i>it's</i>	<i>we're</i>	<i>they're</i>

## Examples

*I'm leaving tomorrow.*  
*Jack's going home in a moment.*

<i>have</i>	<i>I have</i>	<i>you have</i>	<i>he has</i>	<i>she has</i>	<i>we have</i>	<i>they have</i>
	<i>I've</i>	<i>you've</i>	<i>he's</i>	<i>she's</i>	<i>we've</i>	<i>they've</i>

## Examples

*I've eaten your sandwiches.*  
*Anna's left her books at school.*

- *he's* and *she's* = *he has, she has* or *he is, she is*.

With the modal *have to* we do not make contractions.

*I have to leave.* (no contraction possible)

<i>can and could</i>	<i>cannot</i>	<i>could not</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>do not</i>	<i>does not</i>
	<i>can't</i>	<i>couldn't</i>		<i>don't</i>	<i>doesn't</i>

<i>will</i>	<i>will not</i>	<i>shall not</i>
	<i>won't</i>	<i>shan't</i>

<i>would</i>	<i>I would</i>	<i>you would</i>	<i>he would</i>	etc.	<i>would</i>
	<i>I'd</i>	<i>you'd</i>	<i>he'd</i>	etc.	<i>wouldn't</i>

*I'd, etc.* can also be a contraction for *I had* in the past perfect simple.



**1**

Write the full form of the words underlined.

- a) It's very cold today. .... *It is* .....
- b) I'll be back tomorrow. ....
- c) What's the time? ....
- d) Don't worry. It won't rain. ....
- e) I can't see the blackboard. ....
- f) I don't know the answer. ....
- g) My bike! It's been stolen. ....
- h) If I were you, I'd leave. ....
- i) Jane's got two sisters. ....
- j) I've been to Istanbul. ....

**2**

Rewrite each sentence with contractions.

- a) I will not be home early. .... *I won't be home early* .....
- b) Who is coming to your party? .....
- c) We are interested in football. ....
- d) I would not do that if I were you. ....
- e) Paula could not lift the chair. ....
- f) They have sent me a letter. ....
- g) I am leaving tomorrow. ....
- h) Helen has got a dog. ....
- i) It is very cold today. ....
- j) They will be here at 6.00. ....

**3**

Put apostrophes where necessary.

- a) Its time for the news. .... *It's time for the news* .....
- b) Ive decided to buy some boots. ....
- c) Whose books are these? Are they yours? ....
- d) Sues borrowed my paints. ....
- e) This new boats ours. Its got sails and oars. ....
- f) I think the dogs hurt one of its legs. ....
- g) These are my photos. Id like to see yours. ....
- h) My names Toby. Whats yours? ....

**4**

Rewrite each sentence with contractions.

- a) If you asked me, I would not tell you. .... *If you asked me, I wouldn't tell you* .....
- b) I do not know where he has gone. ....
- c) You have not done it yet. ....
- d) I will see you when you are back. ....
- e) Jane has not finished her homework. ....
- f) We were not ready so we could not begin. ....
- g) If you are nervous, do not worry. ....
- h) Chris is out but he will be home soon. ....
- i) I do not remember what I have read. ....
- j) We cannot see what he is carrying. ....

# Unit 70 Consolidation 10

## 1

Write each sentence as reported speech.

- a) 'I'll be late,' said Jim.  
Jim said ...that he would be late.....
- b) 'Kate knows the answer,' said Bill.  
Bill said .....
- c) 'Mary is leaving at 8.00,' said Alan.  
Alan said .....
- d) 'I can't find the keys,' said Dave.  
Dave said .....
- e) 'The bus is going to be late!' said Mark.  
Mark said .....
- f) 'I've lost my books,' said Mr Green.  
Mr Green said .....
- g) 'I'm ready!' said Tina.  
Tina said .....
- h) 'Sophia has broken the window!' said Sam.  
Sam said .....

## 2

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) The window has been broken/was been broken.
- b) The match will played/will be played on Monday, not Sunday.
- c) Tom's new book is published/publishes by Smith and Co.
- d) The book was filmed/was film in 1997.
- e) Some fingerprints were find/were found on the gun.
- f) The new swimming pool will been opened/will be opened tomorrow.
- g) TV programmes are often changed/are often change at the last minute.
- h) An ancient tomb has been discovered/is been discovered.
- i) All the sandwiches were eaten/were eating.
- j) We were taken/We were took to our hotel in a special bus.

## 3

Underline the unnecessary words in each sentence. Not all sentences contain unnecessary words.

- a) The car was stolen by someone.
- b) This photo was taken by a famous photographer.
- c) The book was written by a writer in the 18th century.
- d) My cheese was eaten by mice.
- e) Three men have been arrested by the police.
- f) My suitcase has been opened by someone.
- g) The bikes are produced by workers in our Nottingham factory.
- h) Millions of newspapers are read by people every day.

**4**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) We waste a lot of water.  
...*A lot of water is wasted*.....
- b) We have decided to cancel the meeting.  
It .....
- c) They will open the new sports centre next week.  
The .....
- d) A falling tree injured three people.  
Three people .....
- e) Someone has stolen my wallet!  
My wallet .....
- f) Someone will meet you at the airport.  
You .....
- g) A French person teaches my sister.  
My sister .....
- h) The head teacher gave David a prize.  
David .....

**5**

Put one suitable word in each space.

- a) Please come into the room and .....*sit*..... down.
- b) ..... books in a foreign language is a good way to learn.
- c) Stop bothering me and ..... away!
- d) ..... me your pen! I've broken mine.
- e) ..... is not allowed in the examination room.
- f) ..... letters takes a long time, so I usually phone people.
- g) ..... up early in the morning can be difficult!
- h) ..... park outside this building. It is forbidden.

**6**

Write the contractions in full.

- a) They're building a new cinema. ....*They are*.....
- b) We've forgotten our books. ....
- c) It's a nice day today. ....
- d) I won't be late. ....
- e) It's started to rain. ....
- f) I'd like some tea, please. ....
- g) Jim doesn't live here. ....
- h) Mary's broken her arm. ....
- i) Paul's out at the moment. ....
- j) I shan't tell you again. ....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise how to form different passive tenses. What mistakes do you usually make?
- 2 Does your language have passive form verbs which do not have passive meanings?

# Unit 71

**my, mine, whose, have got** Possession 1

Possession means having or owning things.

## Possessive adjectives

<i>my</i>	<i>your</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>our</i>	<i>their</i>
-----------	-------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	--------------

*This is my bike. Those are our books.*

## Possessive pronouns

<i>mine</i>	<i>yours</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>hers</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>ours</i>	<i>theirs</i>
-------------	--------------	------------	-------------	------------	-------------	---------------

*This bike is mine. Those books are ours.*

We cannot say: *This is mine bike.*

*This bike is the mine.*

## whose?

*Whose bike is this?*

*It's mine.*

*Whose books are these?*

*They're ours.*

*Whose is this bike?*

*Whose are these books?*

- *Who's (who is)* does not have the same meaning as *whose* (of who), but it has the same pronunciation.

## have got

*Jane has got a sports car.*

*Have you got a computer?*

The meaning of *have got* (or *have*) depends on the context.

*Have you got a minute?* (I want to talk to you.)

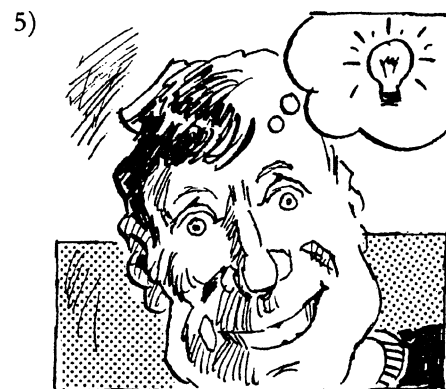
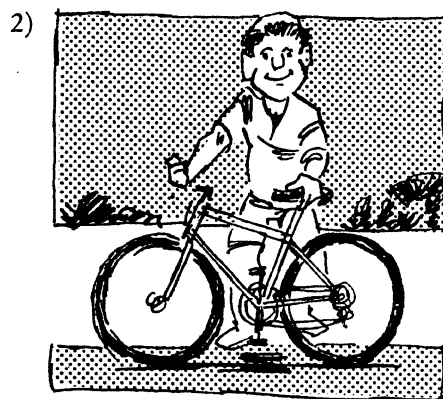
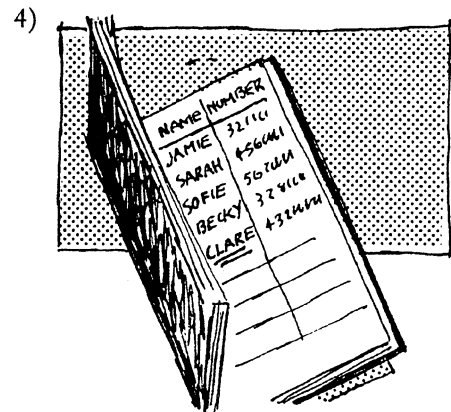
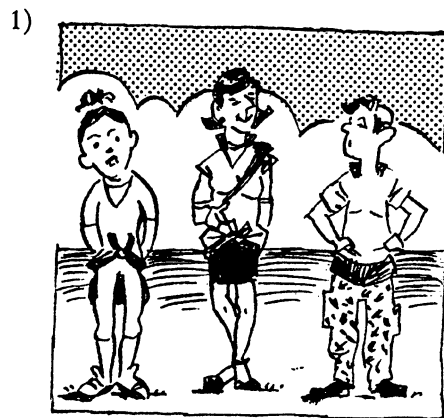
*Have you got a pen?* (I want to borrow it.)

- US and some GB speakers prefer *have*.

*Jane has a sports car.*

*Do you have a computer?*

**1**  
Match the pictures  
1) to 6) with the  
sentences a) to f).



- a) John's got a problem. ....6.
- b) Sarah's got a brother and a sister. ....
- c) Luke's got a new bike. ....
- d) Brian's got a good idea. ....
- e) Nick's got a cold. ....
- f) David's got Clare's number. ....

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Are these books yours/your?
- b) Is this her/hers house?
- c) This car is my/mine.
- d) This isn't us/our suitcase.
- e) Their/Theirs bags are missing.
- f) Is that your/yours pullover?
- g) This is my/mine brother.
- h) That bike is her/hers.
- i) Whose/Who's bag is this?
- j) I love it's/its colour!

**3**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Do they own that big house?  
**theirs**  
*...Is that big house theirs?*.....
- b) Who owns this bike?  
**whose**  
.....
- c) These are my books.  
**mine**  
.....
- d) Does she own that boat?  
**hers**  
.....
- e) Do you own a computer?  
**got**  
.....
- f) Is that your dog?  
**yours**  
.....
- g) We own these houses.  
**ours**  
.....
- h) This is her seat.  
**hers**  
.....
- i) This is their classroom.  
**theirs**  
.....
- j) Who does this CD belong to?  
**whose**  
.....

# Unit 72

**John's bike** Possession 2: apostrophe, of  
**own, belong**

## Possessive apostrophe

We use an apostrophe when we talk about things belonging to people.

Singular ('s)

*This is Jane's house. That's my friend's bike.*

Plurals (s')

*These are the boys' desks.*

Two words with apostrophes together.

*Is that Ann's aunt's car? = Is this the car that belongs to the aunt of Ann?*

Belonging to two people.

*This is Carol and Tony's house.*

Written notices, no apostrophe.

*Welcome to Wallsend Boys Club.*

Names ending in s.

*St James' Park St. James's Park*

- No apostrophe in front of the s of plural words.
- No apostrophe in possessive pronouns *yours, hers, its, ours, theirs*.

## of

We can use *of* when we talk about things belonging to things.

*The roof of the house was damaged.*

*of* is not always necessary

*I saw this dress in the shop window.*

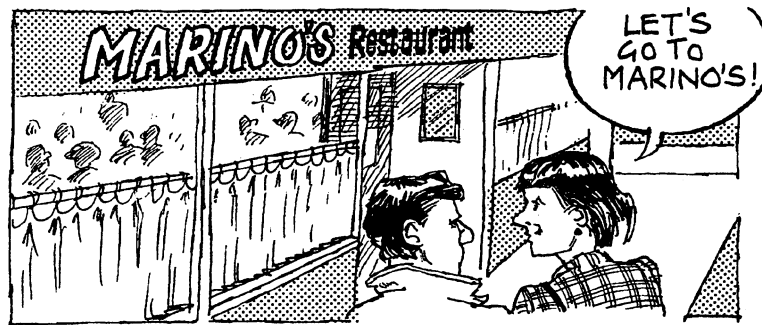
*own* and *belong*

*I own this bike.*

*Do you own this bike?*

*This bike belongs to me.*

*Does this bike belong to you?*



Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Put in any missing apostrophes. In some sentences, no apostrophes are necessary.

- a) Is that book yours or Sams? ..... *...Is that book yours or Sam's?.....*
- b) Davids sisters cats name is Syrup. ....
- c) Have you met Pats brothers? .....
- d) Are those shoes hers? .....
- e) These are the girls fathers. ....
- f) Those are the teachers cars. ....
- g) These sandwiches are ours, not yours. ....
- h) My books are in my friends bag. ....
- i) Whose gloves are these? .....
- j) That is Jacks fathers bike. ....

**2**

Make compound words.

- a) the window of the shop ..... *the shop window.....*
- b) the leg of the table .....
- c) the door of the car .....
- d) the playground of the school .....
- e) the wheel of the bicycle .....
- f) the handle of the door .....

**3**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Does this motorbike own/belong to you?
- b) Does Tim own/belong this bike?
- c) Is this book yours/your's?
- d) Who's/Whose running shoes are these?
- e) It's/Its not mine.
- f) Ann says this isn't hers/her's.
- g) It's/Its got two legs and wings.
- h) The dog has lost it's/its ball.

**4**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) This desk belongs to Jim.  
This *...is Jim's desk.....*
- b) That belongs to her.  
That's .....
- c) Does this belong to you or him?  
Is this .....
- d) Who does this ruler belong to?  
Whose .....
- e) Do the empty seats belong to them?  
Are the .....
- f) We own this swimming pool.  
..... us.



# Unit 73

*It's a lovely day.*

*She's Swiss.*

*It's too cold. It's not hot enough.*

Adjectives, nationalities

## Adjectives

Adjectives tell you more about the size, shape, colour, etc. of nouns. We put them before nouns. They do not have plural *s* or other changes.

*It was a lovely day.*

*These are tasty apples.*

*He is tall.*

*She is tall.*

*They are tall.*

When we use an adjective with a noun, the adjective must come before the noun.

*Look at my new coat!*

*What a lovely hat!*

*You lucky thing!*

*an old man*

*a young woman*

- It is not possible to say: *what a lovely, you lucky, an old, a young*

## What's it like?

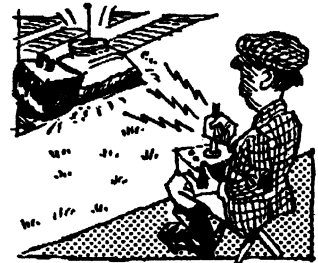
We use this question when we ask someone to give an opinion about, or describe, something or someone. We use the adjective in the answer.

*What's your teacher like?*

*She's fantastic!*

*What's Joe's house like?*

*It's enormous!*



*It's fantastic!*

## Classes and nationalities

Adjectives can become nouns if we add *the*.

Groups of people

*the young    the old    the rich    the poor*

Some nationalities

*the French*

*the Chinese*

*the Japanese*

*the Portuguese*

*the Swiss*

*the British*

*the English*

*the Dutch*

*the Irish*

*the Spanish*

*the Welsh*

*the Danish*

- Some nationalities use noun plurals.

*the Italians*

*the Turks*

*the Greeks*

*the Germans*

*the Americans*

## Verbs of sensation

Adjectives with verbs of sensation: *feel, look, taste, smell, sound.*

*This tastes good.*

*I feel ill.*

*The washing-machine sounds terrible.*

*It looks great.*

*This cheese smells bad.*

*It feels very soft.*

## too and enough

*We can't swim. The water is too cold.*

*We can't swim. The water is not cold enough.*

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Make questions with *What ... like?*

- a) *...What's your teacher like.....?*  
My teacher? She's a very nice person.
- b) .....?  
The end of the film? Wait and see!
- c) .....?  
My parents? When you meet them, you can decide!
- d) .....?  
The weather in my country? It rains a lot.
- e) .....?  
My next door neighbours? They make a lot of noise!
- f) .....?  
Helen's new boyfriend? I haven't met him yet.
- g) .....?  
The city centre? There are some shops and a cinema.
- h) .....?  
The desks in my classroom? Old and uncomfortable!

**2**

Put **one** word in each space.

- a) Mm, this tastes *...good.....* . How did you cook it?
- b) The ..... come from Switzerland.
- c) The ..... sometimes feel ill and lonely.
- d) You look ..... . Do you feel all right?
- e) The ..... come from Japan.
- f) The ..... usually live in enormous houses.
- g) The ..... come from China.
- h) Your bike sounds ..... . Is there something wrong with it?
- i) The ..... come from Turkey.
- j) The government is going to give more help to the .....

**3**

Complete each sentence with *too* or *enough*.

- a) I can't work today. It's *...too.....* hot!
- b) I'd like to buy those shoes, but they are ..... expensive.
- c) We need another ladder. This one isn't long .....
- d) I can't do this exercise because it's ..... difficult.
- e) Nobody bought my bike because it was ..... old.
- f) We had to change rooms because our room wasn't big .....
- g) John didn't win the race because his car wasn't fast .....
- h) Don't play near the railway line. It's ..... dangerous.
- i) Pam couldn't reach the top shelf because she wasn't tall .....
- j) I'm sorry, but your work isn't good .....

# Unit 74

*long blonde hair,  
tired, tiring*

Order of adjectives  
Problem adjectives

## More than one adjective

Two adjectives

*Jim has become happy and rich.*

Three adjectives

*Jim has become happy, rich and famous.*

## Order of adjectives

There are four main groups of adjectives, numbered here 1 to 4.

Position: 1 One or more of these types of adjective:

1a Opinion	1b Size	1c Age	1d Shape	1e Temperature
<i>beautiful</i>	<i>large</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>round</i>	<i>cold</i>

Position: 2 Colours *green, blue, etc.*

Position: 3 Material (what it is made of) *wooden, plastic, etc.*

Position: 4 Purpose (what it is for) *a running shoe*

Position: 5 Noun

## Examples

1c      3      4      5  
*An old, leather, football boot.* (notice the use of commas)

1c      2      3      4      5  
*Some new, orange, lycra, cycling shorts.*

1a      2      3      5  
*A beautiful, green, silk shirt*

- A word, usually a noun (e.g. football), can be used as an adjective.  
*football boot      tennis racket*

## Problems with adjectives

Similar forms in *-ed* and *-ing*.

*I am tired.*

*My work is tiring.* (It makes me tired.)

<i>bored</i>	<i>interested</i>	<i>excited</i>	<i>worried</i>	<i>fascinated</i>
<i>boring</i>	<i>interesting</i>	<i>exciting</i>	<i>worrying</i>	<i>fascinating</i>

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Put the words in order.

- a) shirt cotton a new lovely ..... *a lovely new cotton shirt*.....
- b) large wooden old a house .....
- c) apples large two green beautiful .....
- d) film an new interesting science-fiction .....
- e) green vase old a beautiful .....
- f) short a coat red plastic .....
- g) carpet a old beautiful blue .....
- h) puppy little a sweet black .....

**2**

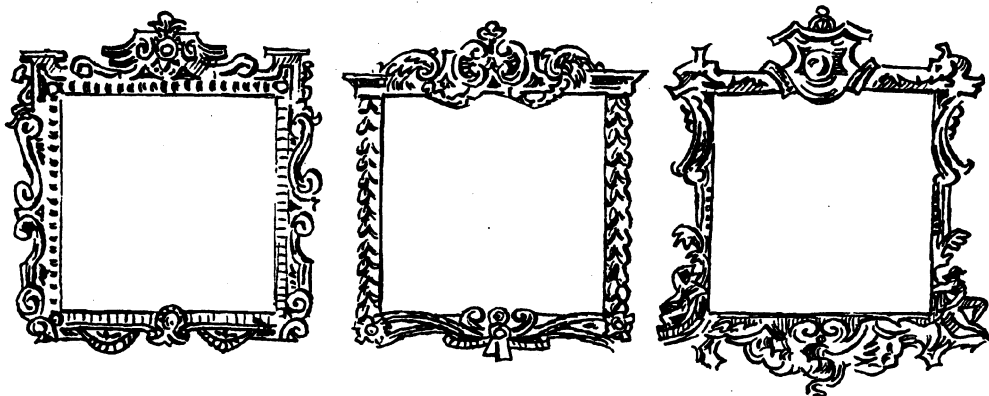
Make more examples of compound words.

- a) a boot for playing football ..... *a football boot*.....
- b) a shoe for running in .....
- c) a road in the country .....
- d) a stadium for athletics .....
- e) a costume for swimming .....
- f) a village on a mountain .....
- g) a student at university .....
- h) a bus for the school .....

**3**

Complete each sentence with a word ending in -ed or -ing.

- a) I think this film is b.oring.....
- b) I don't find politics i.....
- c) Walking makes me t.....
- d) This book is really e.....
- e) Kate is doing her exams and is w.....
- f) Are you i..... in basketball?
- g) Dick always feels b..... at the beach.
- h) Jane finds computers very c.....



*Three beautiful, old, Italian picture frames.*

# Unit 75

***Lisa is older than Clara.***  
***This game is more interesting.***

Making comparisons 1:  
comparative adjectives

Comparatives compare two separate things. We use *than* with comparatives.

*Lisa is older than Clara.*  
*Paula is a faster swimmer than Jane.*

We use *(just) as ... as* when the things compared are equal.

*Harry is (just) as good as Jack.*  
*Harry is (just) as good a player as Jack.*

We use *not as ... as* when we compare things negatively.

*Cathy is not as good as Mary.*  
*Cathy is not as good a player as Mary.*

We use *more than* and *less than* for longer adjectives.

*This game is more interesting than the last one.*  
*I think this game is less interesting than that one.*

## Comparative adjectives

One syllable words add *-er* to the adjective.

*long* → *longer*

One syllable words ending with one consonant, double the final consonant.

*big* → *bigger*

Words ending in consonant + *y* change *y* to *i*.

*dry* → *drier*

Two or more syllables use *more*.

*modern* → *more modern*  
*interesting* → *more interesting*

## Exceptions

Adjectives ending in consonant + *y*.

*happy* → *happier*

Some adjectives with two syllables can be formed in either way.

*healthy* → *healthier*    *more healthy*

Others include: *quiet*, *tired* and words ending *-ow*, *-y*, *-le* and *-er*.

## Irregular adjectives

*good* → *better*

*bad* → *worse*

*little* → *less*

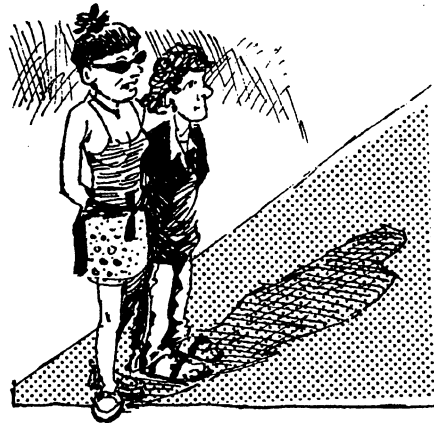
## old for family members

*old* → *elder*

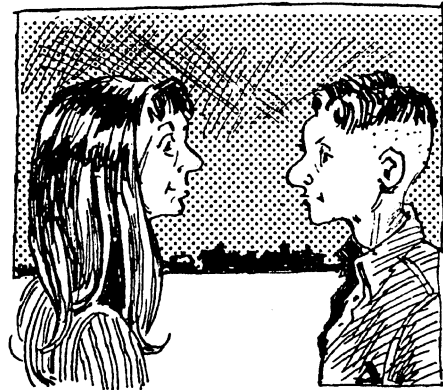
*This is my elder sister.*

**1**

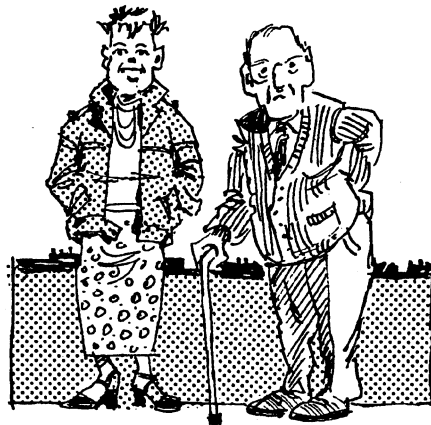
Look at each picture and make a sentence. Use the comparative form of the adjective in brackets.



a) (tall) ..*The girl is taller than the boy...*



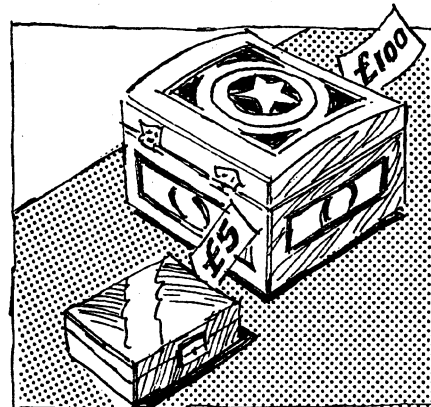
d) (short) .....



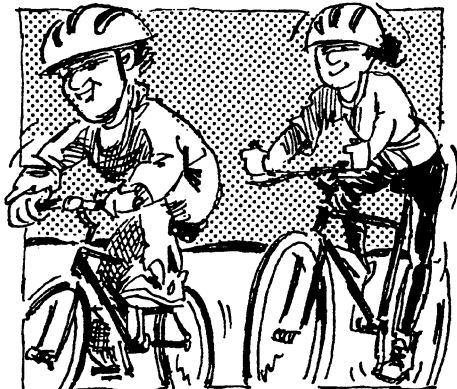
b) (young) .....



e) (small) .....



c) (expensive) .....



f) (big) .....

**2**  
Write the comparative form of each adjective.

- a) big            ...*bigger*.....
- b) happy        .....
- c) beautiful     .....
- d) angry         .....
- e) bad            .....
- f) important    .....
- g) dry            .....
- h) good          .....
- i) hot            .....
- j) expensive    .....

**3**  
Put one word in each space.

- a) This book is better ...*than*..... the other one.
- b) Jim is not ..... tall as his sister.
- c) I don't like running. It's ..... interesting than swimming.
- d) This film is funnier ..... the last one we saw.
- e) Do this exercise first. It's ..... important.
- f) These boots are cheaper ..... the other ones.
- g) Don't worry! It's not ..... bad as you think!
- h) This road is longer ..... I thought.

**4**  
Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use a comparative form of the adjective in brackets.

- a) Tim is older than Sarah. (young)  
Sarah is ...*younger than Tim*.....
- b) Our house is larger than yours. (small)  
Your house is .....
- c) Bill is not as tall as David. (short)  
Bill is .....
- d) Jack's marks are worse than mine. (good)  
My marks ..... Jack's.
- e) This book is cheaper than that one. (expensive)  
That book is .....
- f) Your bike is slower than mine. (fast)  
My bike .....

**5**  
Compare two places that you know.

..... *is much bigger than* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Unit 76

***She's the fastest runner in the world.***

Making comparisons 2:  
superlative adjectives

## Meaning of comparatives and superlatives

Comparatives compare two separate things.

*She is a faster runner than John.*

Superlatives compare one thing in a group with all the other things in that group.

*She is the fastest runner in the world.*



## Superlative adjectives

Add *-est* to the adjective and put *the* before the noun.

*This is the longest river in our country.*

*I am the greatest!*

*long → longest    big → biggest    dry → driest*

Adjectives with two or more syllables use *most*.

*modern → most modern*

*interesting → most interesting*

## Exceptions

Adjectives ending in consonant + *y*.

*happy → happiest    (NOT most happy)*

Some adjectives with two syllables can be formed in either way.

*common → commonest → most common*

Others include: *quiet, tired* and words ending *-ow, -y, -le* and *-er*.

## Irregular superlatives

*good → best*

*bad → worst*

*little → least*

*old → oldest    (for family members)*



1  
Look at the picture and answer the questions.



- a) Who is the tallest?     ...*Dave is the tallest*.....
- b) Who is the shortest?   .....
- c) Who is the eldest?     .....
- d) Who is the youngest?   .....
- e) Who is the heaviest?   .....
- f) Who is the lightest?   .....

2  
Write the superlative form of each adjective.

- a) long     ...*the longest*.....
- b) fit     .....
- c) funny   .....
- d) terrible   .....
- e) good     .....
- f) bad     .....
- g) wide     .....
- h) thick    .....
- i) nasty    .....
- j) strange   .....

3  
Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) This is the better/best restaurant in the town.
- b) This castle is one of the older/oldest in Europe.
- c) Your hotel is more/most comfortable than ours.
- d) This is the worse/worst holiday I have ever had!
- e) Bill is the richer/richest person in the world.
- f) George is happier/happiest than he was.
- g) This film is more/most interesting than the last one.
- h) The blue coat is cheaper/cheapest than the others.

# Unit 77 Consolidation 11

## 1

Put **one** word in each space.

- a) Excuse me, does this umbrella ...*belong*..... to you?
- b) Kate is ..... tallest in the class.
- c) Sorry, but your work isn't good .....
- d) Jane is older ..... Peter.
- e) Kate hasn't ..... any money for the bus.
- f) My bike isn't ..... fast as yours.
- g) ..... bike is this? Is it Helen's?
- h) Both stories are good, but I think this one is ..... than the other.

## 2

Write sentences that mean the same as the first sentence. Use the word in brackets.

- a) This pen belongs to me.  
 ...*This is my pen*..... (my)  
 ...*This pen is mine*..... (mine)
- b) Those bags belong to the students.  
 ..... (their)  
 ..... (theirs)
- c) Tom owns that house.  
 ..... (Tom's)  
 ..... (Tom)
- d) That's Paul and Julie's baby.  
 ..... (their)  
 ..... (theirs)
- e) Who owns this farm?  
 ..... (belong)  
 ..... (whose)

## 3

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- a) We stayed in a ..2. house.  
 1) country beautiful old    2) beautiful old country  
 3) old beautiful country
- b) 'Did you like the film?' 'No, I thought it was .....
- 1) boring    2) bores    3) bored
- c) Is your friend Tom .....
- 1) England    2) an English    3) English
- d) Ann bought a ..... skirt.  
 1) lovely blue    2) blue lovely    3) blue and lovely
- e) Brian and Julia are a .....
- 1) young couple married    2) young married couple  
 3) married young couple
- f) This is ..... school in the country.  
 1) a best    2) the best    3) best

**4**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) My tea isn't hot enough.  
cold  
...*My tea is too cold.*.....
- b) That film was great!  
what  
.....
- c) You are too young to see this film.  
old  
.....
- d) Describe your brother.  
like  
.....
- e) This piece of string is too short.  
long  
.....
- f) I don't find sport interesting.  
interested  
.....

**5**

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) The girl's birthdays are on the same day.  
...*The girls' birthdays are on the same day.*.....
- b) Laura is not very interesting in football.  
.....
- c) Who's bag is this?  
.....
- d) Joe is taller that Harry.  
.....
- e) Which is the higher mountain in the world?  
.....
- f) This tea is not enough hot.  
.....
- g) Jane wore an old green beautiful dress.  
.....
- h) Is this seat Sams' or your's?  
.....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the spelling of comparative adjectives.
- 2 Revise the use of *too* and *enough*.
- 3 Revise the position of apostrophes for possession and also in contractions. What mistakes do you usually make?

# Unit 78

**quickly, fast**  
**Jim runs quickly.**  
**Can you speak more slowly, please?**  
**I often go swimming.**

Adverbs: formation and position, irregular adverbs

## Types of adverbs

Adverbs generally give us more information about an action and tell us how it was done.

*Jim wrote the letter quickly.*

## Forming adverbs

Add *-ly* to an adjective. Adjectives ending in *-y* change it to *-ily*. Adjectives ending in *-ic* add *-ally*.

*beautiful* → *beautifully*

*happy* → *happily*

*terrific* → *terrifically*

## Position of adverbs

Adverbs usually come after the subject or after the object.

*Jim quickly wrote the letter.* (Jim is the subject.)

*Jim wrote the letter quickly.* (The letter is the object.)

- We cannot say: *Jim wrote quickly the letter.*

When the verb does not have an without an object, the adverb goes after the verb.

*Tom runs quickly.*

- We cannot say: *Tom quickly runs.*

## Phrases describing place or manner

*Jim ran up the stairs.*

The adverb goes before the verb, or after the phrase.

*Jim quickly ran up the stairs.*

*Jim ran up the stairs quickly.*

## Irregular adverbs

adjective    *good*

adverb       *well*

## Adverbs which look like adjectives

adverb: *My bike can go very fast.*

adverb: *Helen works hard.*

- For adverbs of frequency see Unit 2; for adverbs of time see Unit 20.

**1**  
Write the adverb form of each adjective.

- |              |                            |              |       |
|--------------|----------------------------|--------------|-------|
| a) quick     | ..... <i>quickly</i> ..... | f) special   | ..... |
| b) fast      | .....                      | g) good      | ..... |
| c) wonderful | .....                      | h) slow      | ..... |
| d) happy     | .....                      | i) beautiful | ..... |
| e) bad       | .....                      | j) sad       | ..... |

**2**  
Complete each sentence with an adverb from the box.

beautifully completely freshly frequently greatly  
happily sincerely specially unbelievably well

- a) All the food in our restaurant is .....*freshly*..... prepared.
- b) I am ..... grateful for your help.
- c) The head teacher was ..... loved by the whole school.
- d) Lidia passed the test because she was ..... prepared.
- e) This is a ..... made piece of jewellery.
- f) We made this cake ..... for you.
- g) The game is not ..... finished yet.
- h) Buckingham Palace is one of London's ..... visited sights.
- i) It is ..... hot today for December!
- j) Graham and Jane are a ..... married couple.

**3**  
Rewrite each sentence. Use the word underlined to make an adverb.

- a) Jim is a good worker.  
.....*Jim works well*.....
- b) Ann is a wonderful dancer.  
.....
- c) David is a slow speaker.  
.....
- d) Carol is an accurate writer.  
.....
- e) Tina is a bad singer.  
.....
- f) Alan is an excellent cook.  
.....
- g) Kate is a careful driver.  
.....
- h) Sam is a secret smoker.  
.....
- i) Ruth is a fast runner.  
.....
- j) Pablo is a skilful painter.  
.....

# Unit 79

## *it, there* Subjects

### *it, its and it's*

Subject or object pronoun

*It stops here. Do you like it?*

Possessive form of *it*

*Look at its beautiful eyes!*

Contracted form of *it is* or *it has*

*It's on the shelf. It's got six legs.  
It is on the shelf. It has got six legs.*



### *there, their and they're*

Pronoun for something that exists

*There is a strange dog in the garden.*

Possessive form of *they*

*Tim and Ann have brought their car.*

Contracted form of *they are*

*'Where are my gloves?' 'They're on the seat.'*



### *there is/are*

Saying that something exists

*There's a spider in the bath. There are lots of trees in your street.*

### *it is/they are*

Something already mentioned

*There's a spider in the bath. It's not very big.  
There are lots of trees in your street. They're beautiful!*

### Expressions with *it*

<i>It's raining.</i>	<i>It's snowing.</i>
<i>It's cold/hot/sunny.</i>	<i>It's a lovely day.</i>
<i>It's half past two.</i>	<i>It's late.</i>
<i>It's lovely to be here.</i>	<i>It's a pity about the weather.</i>
<i>It's a good idea to arrive early.</i>	<i>It doesn't matter.</i>

Other tenses are also possible.

*It was three o'clock. It didn't matter.*

### Expressions with *there*

*There's a phone in the office. There's a bus-stop near here.*

**1**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Is there/their/they're any milk left?
- b) Oh no! It's/Its snowing again.
- c) Tim and Jean have lost there/their/they're tickets.
- d) We're nearly at the cinema. It's/Its not far.
- e) There/Their/They're are lots of people here today.
- f) This isn't your bag. I think it's/its Tom's.
- g) Most of my friends say there/their/they're happy.
- h) The dog hurt it's/its leg so we took it to the vet.
- i) When there/their/they're letter arrives, can you tell me what they say?
- j) I'm sorry, it's/its too late to go out now.

**2**

Complete each sentence with *it, its, it's, there, their* or *they're*.

- a) The others are outside. ...*They're*..... waiting for us.
- b) The school has invited all ..... old pupils to a party.
- c) What an awful day! ..... raining again!
- d) ..... doesn't matter about money. You can pay me back later.
- e) ..... is no way I can get to school before 8.30.
- f) Some people lose ..... keys very easily!
- g) ..... a lovely day today.
- h) I like your new shoes. .... very fashionable!
- i) Kate stopped and listened. .... was something wrong!
- j) ..... a pity about John's accident.

**3**

Put **one** word in each space.

- a) .....~~it~~..... wasn't a good idea to ring the doorbell.
- b) Are ..... any good restaurants in this town?
- c) Is ..... any cheese in that sandwich?
- d) Has anyone forgotten ..... homework?
- e) ..... was a pity that we missed the beginning of the film.
- f) Is ..... a cinema near here, please?
- g) Is that an Indian elephant? ..... has got very small ears.
- h) The dog has left ..... bone in my bed again!
- i) Is ..... any chance of meeting David tonight?
- j) ..... was snowing when we arrived.

**4**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Today is a lovely day.                    **it's**            ..... *It's a lovely day today*.....
- b) This box has got apples in it.           **are**            .....
- c) Rain is falling.                            **it's**            .....
- d) Never mind.                                **matter**        .....
- e) What a pity about Jack's illness.       **it's**            .....
- f) A cat is in the garden.                   **there's**       .....

# Unit 80

**have, have got, get** Problem verbs

**have** We can use *have* as an auxiliary or 'helping' verb and as a main verb.

Auxiliary *I have eaten a pizza.*  
Main *Carlos has a new bike.*

## Auxiliary

Present

Statements	Negative	Questions
<i>I/you/we/they have</i>	<i>I have not/haven't</i>	<i>Have I?</i>
<i>he/she/it has</i>	<i>he has not/hasn't</i>	<i>Has he?</i>

## Past

<i>had</i> (all persons)	<i>I had not/hadn't</i>	<i>Had I?</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------	---------------

## Main verb

Same as the auxiliary but with some differences.

Present negatives and questions

<i>I don't have</i>	<i>Do I have?</i>
<i>he/she/it doesn't have</i>	<i>Does he have?</i>

## Past negatives and questions

<i>I didn't have</i>	<i>Did I have?</i>
----------------------	--------------------

## Examples

Auxiliary	<i>Has Jim written his letters?</i>
Main verb	<i>Do you have a sister?</i>

## have got

The past form of *have got* is *had*.

*Ann has got a new car.*  
*Has Ann got a new car?*  
*Ann hasn't got a new car.*

Past forms do not use *got*.

*Ann had a car when she was a student.*  
*Did Ann have a car?*  
*Ann didn't have a car.*

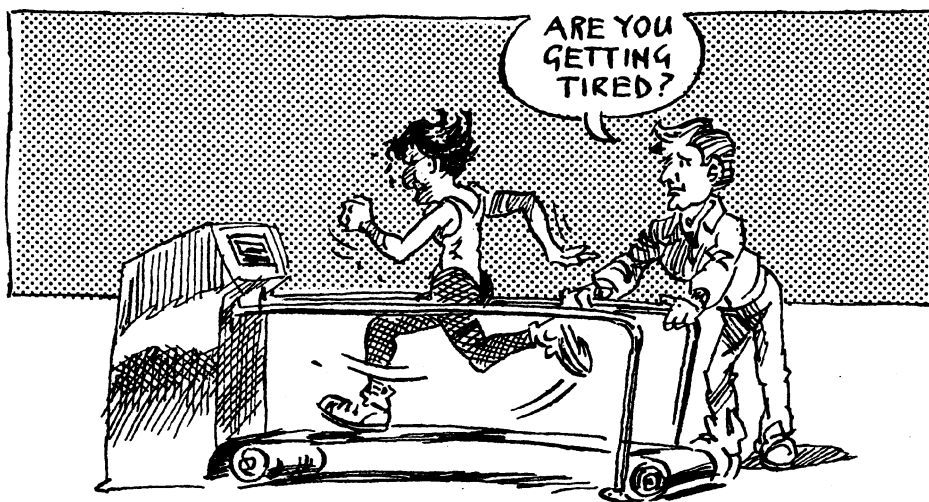
- US prefer *have*.



**get**

Get has a number of different meanings in everyday use.

- Can you get me some milk at the shops?* (buy)
- I got a letter this morning.* (received)
- Are you getting tired?* (becoming)



- How much do you get?* (earn)
- When did you get here?* (arrive)
- I'll just go and get my coat.* (collect)
- How far have you got?* (reached)

● We do not usually use *get* in writing or formal speech.

**1**

Make questions or negatives.

- a) Jane has got a new car. (question) ..... *Has Jane got a new car?* .....
- b) I've got a stamp. (negative) .....
- c) Jim had a cold last week. (question) .....
- d) We've got a problem. (question) .....
- e) You have a test today. (negative) .....
- f) Paul has a sister. (question) .....
- g) You've got a chance. (negative) .....
- h) We have roast beef. (negative) .....
- i) They had a good time. (question) .....
- j) Ann's got a dog. (negative) .....

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Put each sentence or question into the past tense.

- a) I've got a cat.  
.....*I had a cat.*.....
- b) Have you got a bike?  
.....
- c) Jim hasn't got any time.  
.....
- d) David's got an exam.  
.....
- e) We haven't got a house.  
.....
- f) Has Tina got a cold?  
.....
- g) You haven't got a chance!  
.....
- h) We've got an idea.  
.....

**3**

Rewrite each sentence or question with a form of *get*.

- a) It's becoming warmer.  
.....*It's getting warmer.*.....
- b) Are you going to buy a paper?  
.....
- c) What time did you arrive there?  
.....
- d) Did you receive my e-mail?  
.....
- e) Can you collect my parcel for me?  
.....
- f) When did you reach home?  
.....
- g) Kate earns a lot of money.  
.....

**4**

Replace the words underlined with a verb from the box.

arrive in   become   buy   collect   earn   have   reach   receive
--

- a) When you get to .....*reach*..... the end of the book, you know who the murderer is.
- b) How much do you get ..... in your new job?
- c) Do you get ..... your milk delivered?
- d) Did you get ..... any letters this morning?
- e) Could you get ..... me some stamps when you go shopping?
- f) Put your coat on. You don't want to get ..... cold.
- g) I have to get ..... my trousers from the cleaner's today.
- h) What time do we get to ..... London?

# Unit 81

**make, do,** Problem verbs  
**go swimming,** Phrasal verbs  
**get up**

## **make and do**

We *do* an action.

We *make* something that was not there before.

<i>do your work/homework</i>	<i>make a cake</i>
<i>do the cooking/ironing, etc.</i>	<i>make a mistake</i>
<i>do your hair/teeth, etc.</i>	<i>make a noise</i>
<i>do nothing</i>	<i>make a cup of tea/coffee</i>
<i>do exercises</i>	<i>make an offer</i>

## **Expressions**

*What do you do?* (What's your job?)  
*How do you do?* (a greeting: the reply is *How do you do?*)

## **go/come + -ing**

<i>to go/come shopping</i>	<i>to go/come sailing</i>
<i>to go/come skating</i>	<i>to go/come fishing</i>
<i>to go/come skiing</i>	<i>to go/come swimming</i>

- We cannot say: *to go/come playing football*.

## **Phrasal verbs**

Examples with two words:

<i>get up</i> (in the morning)	= leave your bed
<i>look up</i> (a word in the dictionary)	= try to find
<i>fill in</i> (a form)	= write the details on
<i>go on</i> (doing something)	= continue

Examples with three words:

<i>get on</i> (well) <i>with</i> (someone)	= have good relations with
<i>look forward to</i> (something)	= think you will enjoy
<i>run out of</i> (something)	= have no more of

- Always check in a dictionary when you come across (meet) a new example.

**1**

Complete each sentence with a suitable form of *make* or *do*.

- a) Wait a minute. I'm *doing*..... my hair at the moment.
- b) Please don't ..... so much noise!
- c) My father ..... most of the cooking in our house.
- d) Oh dear, I think I've ..... a mistake.
- e) Are you going to ..... Michael a birthday cake?
- f) We sat in the room for ages and just ..... nothing.
- g) They ..... Harry an offer which he couldn't refuse.
- h) Don't forget to ..... your homework before you go out.
- i) When you have ..... this exercise, try the next one.
- j) Could you ..... me a cup of coffee?

**2**

Complete each sentence with a suitable form of *go* or *come*. More than one answer may be possible.

- a) Pat and Sam *went*..... shopping in New York last month.
- b) Do you want to ..... swimming with us tomorrow?
- c) Jim likes ..... fishing with his friends.
- d) My brother ..... to my house yesterday.
- e) Kate usually ..... skiing in Switzerland.
- f) We're ..... sailing tomorrow. Do you want to come?
- g) I used to ..... swimming a lot, but I stopped.
- h) Mary loves ..... shopping with her sister.
- i) I ..... skating last year for the first time.
- j) Do you feel like ..... fishing tomorrow?

**3**

Match the sentences with similar meanings.

- a) I tried to find the word in a dictionary. ...7.
  - b) I have good relations with my neighbours. ....
  - c) I didn't get out of bed until after midday. ....
  - d) I wrote down all my personal details on the form. ....
  - e) The teacher asked me to stop talking, but I didn't. ....
  - f) I think I'm going to enjoy my holiday. ....
  - g) I haven't got any more food. ....
  - h) I'm very similar to my father. ....
  - i) I spent my childhood near London. ....
  - j) I've stopped eating sweets. ....
- 1) I filled it in.
  - 2) I take after him.
  - 3) I get on well with them.
  - 4) I've given them up.
  - 5) I'm looking forward to it.
  - 6) I've run out.
  - 7) I looked it up.
  - 8) I went on talking.
  - 9) I grew up there.
  - 10) I got up late.

# Unit 82

**He apologized for being late.  
Do you fancy going to the cinema?  
Joe refused to sit down.**

Verbs with prepositions,  
gerund or infinitive

## Verbs followed by prepositions

About	<i>dream</i>	<i>I dreamt about Switzerland last night.</i>
	<i>know</i>	<i>Do you know a lot about physics?</i>
	<i>talk</i>	<i>What are you talking about?</i>
At	<i>look</i>	<i>Look at these lovely flowers.</i>
For	<i>apologize</i>	<i>I apologize for being late.</i>
	<i>pay</i>	<i>Tim paid for my ticket.</i>
	<i>wait</i>	<i>I'll wait for you outside.</i>
In	<i>believe</i>	<i>Do you believe in ghosts?</i>
To	<i>belong</i>	<i>Does this belong to you?</i>
	<i>explain</i>	<i>Could you explain something to me please?</i>
	<i>lend</i>	<i>Kate lent her pen to me.</i>
	<i>listen</i>	<i>You're not listening to me!</i>
	<i>talk</i>	<i>Jill was talking to her sister.</i>



## Verbs followed by verbal noun -ing or noun

Examples: *dislike, enjoy, fancy, can't stand*  
*I dislike getting up early.*  
*Pat enjoys using a computer.*  
*Do you fancy going to the cinema?*  
*I can't stand travelling by bus.*

## Verbs followed by infinitive + to

Examples: *ask, choose, help, manage, offer, refuse, want*  
*I chose to walk to the station.*  
*Sue asked us to wait.*  
*Jack helped me (to) do my homework.*  
*I managed to find a taxi.*  
*Helen offered to help me.*  
*Joe refused to sit down.*  
*Paula wanted to go home.*

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Put one word in each space.

- a) I've lost my wallet, so I can't pay ...*for*..... my ticket.
- b) Do you ..... going to the cinema this evening?
- c) What do you ..... about the Eiffel Tower?
- d) Alan doesn't ..... to get up before midday.
- e) You don't really ..... in ghosts, do you?
- f) I really dislike ..... homework!
- g) The customer didn't like the meal, and ..... to pay.
- h) Could you lend a pen ..... Jim? He's lost his.
- i) Do these books belong ..... you?
- j) I must apologize ..... being late. I'm very sorry.

**2**

Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.

apologize   can't stand   choose   enjoy   know lend   listen   manage   refuse   wait
---

- a) Students who do not .....*manage*..... to finish now, can come back later.
- b) Jan ..... doing the washing-up.
- c) If drivers ..... to stop, the police arrest them.
- d) I ..... for damaging your bike.
- e) Do think you could ..... for me outside?
- f) Did you ..... to the football match on the radio?
- g) I don't really ..... working at weekends.
- h) Ann and Pat ..... a lot about wild life.
- i) Tim used to ..... his calculator to his friends
- j) Some students ..... to study Spanish instead of French.

**3**

Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence.

- a) Jim said that he would pay for my ticket.  
Jim offered ...*to pay for my ticket*.....
- b) I borrowed Helen's camera.  
Helen lent .....
- c) Could you give me an explanation of this?  
Could ..... me?
- d) 'Please wait,' the teacher asked us.  
The teacher asked us .....
- e) You were in my dreams last night.  
I dreamt .....
- f) Carol would like to go to the cinema tonight.  
Carol wants .....
- g) Ann wants to go to the park.  
Ann fancies .....
- h) Is this pencil yours?  
Does .....?

# Unit 83

**Sam was late for school.**

Be with adjectives and prepositions

**be + adjective  
followed by a  
preposition**

About

*excited*

*We were all excited about the match.*

*about*

*You were right about it.*

*sorry*

*I'm sorry about that.*

At

*bad*

*Sorry, I'm bad at adding up!*

*good*

*Bill is really good at cooking.*

For

*famous*

*Our country is famous for its mountains.*

*late*

*Sam was late for school yesterday.*

*ready*

*Are you ready for your lunch?*

From

*different*

*This house is different from ours.*

In

*interested*

*Are you interested in computers?*

Of

*afraid*

*Michael is afraid of spiders.*

*frightened*

*Lisa is frightened of the dark.*

*full*

*My sleeping bag is full of ants!*

*tired*

*I'm tired of the same old things!*

On

*keen*

*I'm not very keen on fried food.*

To

*married*

*Ellen is married to Jack.*

With

*angry/annoyed*

*I'm really angry/annoyed with you.*

*bored*

*We're bored with this film.*

*pleased*

*Kate's teacher is pleased with her.*

Most adjectives in the list have different meanings with other prepositions.  
Check in a dictionary.

Elementary Language Practice

**1**

Choose the correct word underlined.

- a) Brazil is famous for/in its beautiful beaches.
- b) I'm not very good for/at maths.
- c) Your computer is different from/with mine.
- d) Kate is afraid of/for mice.
- e) My teacher was very pleased with/to me.
- f) Helen was very excited for/about her prize.
- g) Peter isn't very keen on/for playing golf.
- h) My town is famous for/with its soap factory.
- i) Why are you so angry for/with me?
- j) Is your brother interested in/to football?

**2**

Put one word in each space.

- a) Are you ready for bed yet? It's very late.
- b) Stop shouting! Why are you ..... with me?
- c) Joe's school bag is ..... of dirty pieces of paper!
- d) I'm ..... of doing the same old things every day!
- e) Diana is ..... at physics and always gets top marks.
- f) Paula has decided to get married ..... the boy next door.
- g) You were ..... about my wallet. It was on my desk, as you said.
- h) Lots of people I know are ..... of the dark.
- i) I'm not very ..... on Chinese food.
- j) Clive is really ..... with his new bike. He says it's great.

**3**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) George arrived at school late.  
**for**  
...*George was late for school*.....
- b) I find staying at home boring.  
**with**  
.....
- c) Ann and Chris are married.  
**to**  
.....
- d) I apologize for my behaviour.  
**about**  
.....
- e) Joaquim is a very good cyclist.  
**at**  
.....
- f) Do you find history interesting?  
**in**  
.....



# Unit 84 Consolidation 12

## 1

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- a) I like your new bike. ..2. really fast!  
1) Its 2) It's 3) It
- b) Oh no! ..... a huge traffic jam!  
1) There's 2) Its 3) It has
- c) ..... seems to be something wrong with my camera.  
1) It 2) There 3) It's
- d) Hurry up! ..... half past seven already.  
1) There's 2) Its 3) It's
- e) Tina's house is very large. .... got six bedrooms.  
1) It is 2) There is 3) It has
- f) ..... no doubt about it. Helen is the winner!  
1) There's 2) It's 3) It
- g) Someone has left ..... watch in the classroom.  
1) there 2) their 3) they're
- h) You can phone from here. .... a phone in the corridor.  
1) It has 2) There's 3) It's

## 2

Complete each sentence with an adverb from the box.

badly	carelessly	hard	loudly
politely	quickly	secretly	well

- a) I slept .....*well*....., thank you.
- b) Deborah studied ..... for her exams.
- c) Paul did his homework .....
- d) Mary took the money .....
- e) Harry drove ..... to the hospital.
- f) David always behaves .....
- g) Ann shouted .....
- h) Sarah speaks French .....

## 3

Put one word in each space.

- a) The police told Jim to stop, but he .....*refused*..... to obey them.
- b) Nobody ..... to Tim when he starts talking.
- c) I don't ..... in magic and ghosts and things like that.
- d) Jane is very ..... with her new car. She likes it a lot.
- e) Luckily, when it started raining we ..... a place to wait.
- f) Susan is really ..... at making clothes.
- g) Are you ..... in history or archaeology?
- h) Liz isn't very ..... on fish. She prefers meat.

Elementary Language Practice

**4**

Rewrite each sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the word in bold.

- a) Birds frighten Ann.  
of  
*Ann is frightened of birds.*.....
- b) Tina arrived at school late yesterday.  
for  
.....
- c) I'm sorry I missed you.  
apologize  
.....
- d) Harry finds his lessons boring.  
is  
.....
- e) I don't like getting up early.  
stand  
.....
- f) There are lots of people in the cinema.  
full  
.....

**5**

Put one word in each space.

- a) Paula *went*..... swimming yesterday afternoon.
- b) Why don't you look ..... the word in your dictionary?
- c) I really hate ..... up early.
- d) I'm looking ..... to going on holiday.
- e) Are you interested ..... computers?
- f) I think we've ..... out of milk.
- g) Have I ..... any mistakes?
- h) Do you fancy ..... to the theatre?

**6**

Correct each sentence or question.

- a) It's time to make your homework. *It's time to do your homework.*.....
- b) Tim worked very hardly for his exams. ....
- c) Helen get ups at 7.30 every day. ....
- d) It's a strange dog in our garden. ....
- e) David wanted going home. ....
- f) Do you know a lot for physics? ....
- g) Does Bill got a brother? ....
- h) Would you like to come for shopping? ....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Revise the way we use adjectives and adverbs.
- 2 Revise adverbs which do not end in *-ly*.
- 3 Revise the uses of *have got* and *get*.
- 4 Check new verbs in your dictionary. Make sure you know if they are followed by the infinitive, the gerund (*-ing*) or a preposition.

# Unit 85

## Punctuation

Punctuation helps the reader understand what we write, and is an important part of writing.

### Basic punctuation

- Full stop (.)  
At the end of a sentence.  
In abbreviations e.g. etc.

Full stops are often left out in Mr and Mrs.

- Comma (,)  
Lists *I bought a pen, some paper and an eraser.*  
*After lunch we played football, had a picnic, and danced.*  
The last two items are only separated by a comma when they are long.

#### Openings

After some words or phrases at the beginning of a sentence.  
*First of all, I do not agree with this.*

Commas do not join sentences.

*Two girls came into the room. They were carrying chairs.*  
*Two girls carrying chairs came into the room.*

We cannot write: *Two girls came into the room, they were carrying chairs.*

- Question mark (?)  
After questions  
*What's your name?*
- Exclamation mark (!)  
In informal writing  
*Helen has won first prize!*

### Apostrophes (')

- Possessive apostrophe (')  
*This is Jane's house.*  
*That's a boy's bike.*  
*These are the boys' desks.*
- See Unit 72.

Elementary Language Practice

● *it's and its*

The possessive form of *it* is *its*.

*I like its colour.*

*It's* is the contracted form of *it is* or *it has*.

*It's a lovely day!*

*It's rained three times this week.*

● Apostrophe with *o' clock*.

*It's six o' clock.*

*It's nine o' clock.*

**1**

Tick the sentence with the correct punctuation.

- a) 1) Have you seen my pen, I'm looking for it?  
2) Have you seen my pen I'm looking for it?  
3) Have you seen my pen? I'm looking for it. ✓
- b) 1) We bought some oranges some apples and, a loaf.  
2) We bought some oranges, some apples and a loaf.  
3) We bought, some oranges, some apples, and a loaf.
- c) 1) What's the matter? with your bike, is it broken?  
2) What's the matter? with your bike? Is it broken?  
3) What's the matter with your bike? Is it broken?
- d) 1) Two boys in football kit ran across the playground.  
2) Two boys, in football kit, ran, across the playground.  
3) Two boys in football kit ran, across the playground.
- e) 1) Go down this street turn left and then cross the road.  
2) Go down this street, turn left, and then cross the road.  
3) Go down, this street, turn left, and then, cross the road.
- f) 1) Look out! You'll fall off the bus if you're not careful.  
2) Look out? You'll fall off the bus if, you're not careful.  
3) Look out you'll fall off the bus, if you're not careful!
- g) 1) First of all I think, this idea is wrong.  
2) First of all, I think, this idea is wrong.  
3) First of all, I think this idea is wrong.
- h) 1) If I, were you, I'd go to bed earlier.  
2) If I were you, I'd go to bed earlier.  
3) If I were you I'd go, to bed earlier.

**2**  
Put in apostrophes  
where necessary.

- a) Its six o clock. Its time for the news.  
*...It's six o'clock. It's time for the news.*.....
- b) Ive decided to buy Jims old boots.  
.....
- c) Whose books are these? Are they yours?  
.....
- d) Sues borrowed Carols paints.  
.....
- e) This new boats ours. Its got sails and oars.  
.....
- f) My sisters are going to Janes party.  
.....
- g) I think the dogs hurt one of its legs.  
.....
- h) Wheres Helens brothers bike?  
.....

**3**  
Rewrite each  
sentence or  
question putting  
in punctuation  
and apostrophes  
where necessary.

- a) Whats the matter with Mrs Smiths dog  
*...What's the matter with Mrs Smith's dog?*.....
- b) Carols got two brothers a sister and three cousins  
.....
- c) Thats not yours Its mine  
.....
- d) I bought some bananas two apples and some sandwiches  
.....
- e) Dont worry The boys will borrow their friends bikes  
.....
- f) Theres something wrong with Anns car  
.....
- g) Have you seen the swimming pool Its fantastic  
.....
- h) Its eight o clock Its time for the bus  
.....

**4**  
Put in  
punctuation  
where necessary.

Dear Miss Green  
Im writing to you to tell you that Steven isnt coming to school today  
because hes not feeling very well Hell be in class again on Friday  
morning If youd like to talk to me you can call me at home When is  
the last day of term  
Best wishes  
John Roberts

# Unit 86

## Spelling 1 Rules, problems

### How to improve your spelling

Always use a dictionary to check the spelling of new words. Use the spelling of other words you know to help you. Make lists of the words you usually spell wrongly. Read as much as possible – this will give you more experience of the way words are spelled.

### Adding *-ing* to verbs

One syllable words which end in one vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*) and one consonant double the last consonant.

*swim* → *swimming*    *put* → *putting*

Compare these words which do not double the consonant:

*shoot* → *shooting*    *lift* → *lifting*

Two syllable words which end in one vowel and one consonant double the last consonant when the stress is on the second syllable.

*begin* → *beginning*    *control* → *controlling*

Compare these words with the stress on the first syllable:

*wonder* → *wondering*    *threaten* → *threatening*

Exceptions to this rule in British English are verbs ending in *-l*.

*travel* → *travelling*    *cancel* → *cancelling*

Words which end in one vowel, one consonant and *e* drop the final *e*.

*write* → *writing*    *drive* → *driving*

### Words ending in *-ful*

The suffix *-ful* has only one *-l*.

*beautiful*    *successful*

When *-ly* is added for adverbs, the *l* is doubled.

*beautifully*    *successfully*

### *ie* or *ei*?

There is a useful rule: *i* before *e* except after *c*, when the sound is /i:/.

*field*    *niece*    but    *receive*    *receipt*

### Commonly misspelled words 1

<i>accommodation</i>	<i>believe</i>
<i>address</i>	<i>biscuit</i>
<i>advertisement</i>	<i>careful</i>
<i>almost</i>	<i>chocolate</i>
<i>answer</i>	<i>diary</i>
<i>argument</i>	<i>different</i>
<i>beautiful</i>	<i>disappear</i>
<i>beginning</i>	<i>disappointed</i>

- 1**  
Make new words.  
Use *-ing*, *-ful* or *-ly*.
- |                        |                         |                         |       |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| a) swim + <i>ing</i>   | ... <u>swimming</u> ... | f) beauty + <i>ful</i>  | ..... |
| b) write + <i>ing</i>  | .....                   | g) success + <i>ful</i> | ..... |
| c) begin + <i>ing</i>  | .....                   | h) wonder + <i>ful</i>  | ..... |
| d) decide + <i>ing</i> | .....                   | i) careful + <i>ly</i>  | ..... |
| e) go + <i>ing</i>     | .....                   | j) happy + <i>ly</i>    | ..... |

- 2**  
Choose the correct word underlined.
- Would you like some chocolate/chocolate?
  - It's a really beautiful/beatiful day today.
  - Gerry awnsered/answered all the questions.
  - Could you give me your adress/address?
  - We're looking for accommodation/acommodation.
  - We missed the begining/beginning of the film.
  - We were almost/allmost late for the concert.
  - Helen was very dissapointed/disappointed when she failed the exam.

- 3**  
There is one spelling error in each sentence. Correct the word.
- I don't beleive that aliens have ever visited our planet. ....believe....
  - Mary writes in her secret dairy every night. ....
  - Would you like a chocolate buiscit? They're very tasty. ....
  - Put your books in the cuboard at the end of the lesson. ....
  - Helen is still changeing her clothes. ....
  - George and I go to diferrent schools. ....
  - This swimming pool is deepper than the other one. ....
  - When I cut myself, there was a lot of blud on the floor! ....

- 4**  
Choose the correct word underlined.
- Suddenly the glass of water disappeared/dissappeared!
  - I'm sorry, but I just can't believe/beleave your lies.
  - Harry gets really angry/angery sometimes.
  - I like the television advertisment/advertisement for Choco-Bars.
  - Mandy and her sister belong to diferrent/different sports clubs.
  - An apple/appel a day keeps the doctor away.
  - How many people are coming/comeing to your party?
  - Tom's plane arives/arrives at 6.30.

- 5**  
Make a list of words you usually spell wrongly.
- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |

# Unit 87

## Spelling 2 Same pronunciation, different spelling

### Words with the same pronunciation

There are many words with the same pronunciation, but different spelling and different meanings. Check the meanings of these words.

<i>brake</i>	<i>break</i>	<i>hour</i>	<i>our</i>
<i>know</i>	<i>no</i>	<i>meat</i>	<i>meet</i>
<i>past</i>	<i>passed</i>	<i>piece</i>	<i>peace</i>
<i>right</i>	<i>write</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>sea</i>
<i>some</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>son</i>	<i>sun</i>
<i>steal</i>	<i>steel</i>	<i>there</i>	<i>their</i>
<i>whose</i>	<i>who's</i>	<i>won</i>	<i>one</i>
<i>week</i>	<i>weak</i>	<i>wood</i>	<i>would</i>
<i>wear</i>	<i>where</i>		

### q and u

The letter *q* is always followed by *u*.

*question squid acquire*

### Words with a syllable which is not pronounced

Some words appear to have more syllables than they actually have when pronounced. Examples which are often spelled wrongly:

*temperature library Wednesday*  
*vegetable interesting comfortable*

### Nouns and verbs with c and s

Noun	<i>advice</i>	<i>practice</i>	<i>licence</i>
Verb	<i>advise</i>	<i>practise</i>	<i>license</i>

### Commonly misspelled words 2

<i>discuss</i>	<i>fruit</i>
<i>doctor</i>	<i>half</i>
<i>February</i>	<i>hundred</i>
<i>foreign</i>	<i>immediately</i>
<i>fortunately</i>	<i>independent</i>
<i>forty</i>	<i>know</i>
<i>friend</i>	<i>laugh</i>



**1**  
Choose the correct word underlined.

- a) George left at the end of February/Febuary.
- b) Tim invited all his freinds/friends to his party.
- c) Hurry up! It's half past eight/eigth.
- d) There were over three hunndred/hundred people at the concert.
- e) We sat around the table and discussed/discused the problem.
- f) More than harf/half the students passed the exam.
- g) *The Little Princess* used to be my favourite/faverite book.
- h) Don't dropp/drop that vase. It will break!
- i) Please bring me my lunch immediatly/immediately.
- j) Helen wants to leave home and be independent/independant.

**2**  
There is one spelling error in each sentence. Correct the word.

- a) More than fourty people needed accommodation. ....*forty*.....
- b) Helen knows more than ten forein languages. ....
- c) We had a light lunch of friut and salad. ....
- d) Tim crashed into a tree, but fortunatly he wasn't injured. ....
- e) Can I have something to eat? I'm really hungrey. ....
- f) All Tina's friends visited her in hospittal when she was ill. ....
- g) Make a gess if you don't know the answer. ....
- h) We really enjoied ourselves at the party last night. ....
- i) If your shoes are derty, take them off at the door. ....
- j) Let me introduce you to the other members of my familly. ....

**3**  
Choose the correct word underlined.

- a) Our team has won/one the school swimming competition.
- b) Could you go to the butcher's and buy some meat/meet?
- c) Jim is Mr Brown's son/sun.
- d) I'd like to play football, but I feel really weak/week.
- e) Joe and Dave were/where on opposite teams in the football match.
- f) Sorry, I don't know/no the answer to that question.
- g) Mary saw the old man steal/steel the box of biscuits.
- h) Don't forget to right/write me a letter.
- i) Excuse me. Who's/Whose bags are these?
- j) Melanie was happy when she passed/past her driving test.

**4**  
Make a list of words you usually spell wrongly.

.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

# Unit 88

## Spelling 3 British and American spelling

There are many differences between British and American spelling.

British	American
<i>centre</i>	<i>center</i>
<i>cheque</i> (bank)	<i>check</i>
<i>colour</i>	<i>color</i>
<i>dialogue</i>	<i>dialog</i>
<i>jewellery</i>	<i>jewelry</i>
<i>practise</i> (verb)	<i>practice</i>
<i>programme</i>	<i>program</i>
<i>theatre</i>	<i>theater</i>
<i>traveller</i>	<i>traveler</i>
<i>tyre</i>	<i>tire</i>

### Commonly misspelled words 3

<i>library</i>	<i>said</i>	<i>village</i>
<i>minute</i>	<i>science</i>	<i>Wednesday</i>
<i>mountain</i>	<i>should</i>	<i>where</i>
<i>necessary</i>	<i>success</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>neighbour</i>	<i>swimming</i>	<i>wonderful</i>
<i>receive</i>	<i>tomorrow</i>	<i>writing</i>
<i>remember</i>	<i>uncomfortable</i>	<i>written</i>
<i>right</i>		



### Task .

Make a list of your own spelling problems.

**1**

Choose the correct word underlined.

- a) Have you been to the library/libary?
- b) I'll see you on Wensday/Wednesday.
- c) Is it really necessarry/necessary to do this?
- d) This new chair is really very uncomfortable/uncomftable.
- e) Helen has decided to become a sceintist/scientist.
- f) Witch/Which one of you is Mrs Henley?
- g) We had a wonderfull/wonderful time at the folk music festival.
- h) Will Jack be here tommorrow/tomorrow?
- i) What do you think of our new neighbours/neibours?
- j) Paula had a lovely holiday in the mountins/mountains.

**2**

There is one spelling error in each sentence. Correct the word.

- a) I don't think you shoud do so much unnecessary work. ....*should*.....
- b) We discussed the possibility of going swiming tomorrow. ....
- c) If you feel uncomftable, why don't you try this armchair. ....
- d) I haven't writen to my aunt to thank her for her invitation. ....
- e) I became a succesful businessman after studying economics. ....
- f) I don't really unnderstand why this is wrong. ....
- g) Ron has to complete his writeing before Wednesday. ....
- h) Where have you bean? I've been looking for you all day. ....
- i) What's the mater with your neighbour's little dog? ....
- j) Tony has started puting on weight, so he is going on a diet. ....

**3**

There are two spelling errors in each sentence. Correct both words.

- a) I received three leters this morning but I haven't writen any. ....*letters*..... ....*written*.....
- b) We're leaveing early in the morning, so set the alarme clock. ....
- c) We're going on holliday to France with some old friends. ....
- d) Did you rember to do your sience homework on Wednesday? ....
- e) While we were chooseing our meal, the waiter brough some water. ....
- f) Helen offen goes runing in the park for exercise. ....
- g) I'm writting a letter to my penfreind with all my news. ....
- h) I had a wonderfull jorney to the mountains with my friends. ....
- i) It was a beautifull day so we decided to go swimming. ....
- j) The first astronauts succesfully landded on the moon in 1969. ....

# Unit 89

Word formation and collocation

Prefixes, suffixes, phrasal verbs,  
compound words

## Prefixes

A prefix goes at the front of a word to make a new word.

*interesting*      *uninteresting*  
*like*              *dislike*

### 1

Add a prefix from the box to the underlined word. You can use a prefix more than once.

dis- un- im- re-

- a) I can't answer this question. It's impossible.
- b) Kate started crying because she was so happy.
- c) Paul never waits in queues. He is too patient.
- d) Stealing other people's pens is honest!
- e) A million pounds was given to the hospital by a/an known person.
- f) When you write this, make it a bit shorter.
- g) Mary was wearing a/an usual hat, shaped like a giant flower.
- h) I don't think you are right. I agree completely.

## Suffixes

A suffix goes at the end of a word to make a new word.

*danger*      *dangerous*  
*care*        *careful*

### 2

Add a suffix from the box to the underlined word. Use each suffix once only.

-ing -ed -ance -ful -able -ly -ous -er

- a) Don't stand near the water! It's dangerous.. You might fall in!
- b) Thank you for your advice. You have been very helpful .
- c) Our new science teacher..... is very young.
- d) Harry didn't think the book was very interesting..... .
- e) I don't like this fish. It's not very well cooked..... .
- f) I like this town. The people are very friendly..... .
- g) If you have a haircut, it will change your appearance..... .
- h) That was a great film! It was really enjoyable..... .

**Phrasal verbs (See Unit 81)**

Phrasal verbs can be difficult to remember. It is a good idea to keep a record of all the new phrasal verbs you see.

**3**

Complete each part sentence a) to j) with one of the endings 1) to 10).

- a) When little Johnny grows ...6.....  
 b) Don't forget to turn .....  
 c) Can I try .....  
 d) Mary always takes .....  
 e) What time do you usually get .....  
 f) Jim is really looking .....  
 g) If you don't know a word, look it .....  
 h) Will you look .....  
 i) The plane took .....  
 j) Could you fill .....
- 1) off more than two hours late.  
 2) after my cat while I'm away?  
 3) forward to his holiday in Spain.  
 4) up at the weekend?  
 5) in this application form, please?  
 6) up, he wants to be a pilot.  
 7) off the lights when you leave.  
 8) on these trousers please?  
 9) part in class activities.  
 10) up in a good dictionary.

**Prepositions after adjectives and verbs (See Units 82 and 83)**

Using prepositions correctly can be difficult. Try making a list of the prepositions which are used differently in your language.

**4**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

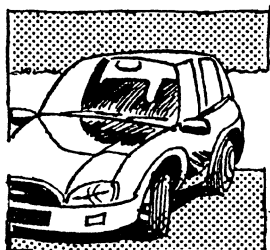
- a) Do you believe for/in ghosts?  
 b) Dave is very good at/for tennis.  
 c) What's the difference of/between these two words?  
 d) Mr Smith is very different of/from the rest of our teachers.  
 e) I'm not very keen on/at outdoor sports.  
 f) Carol spent a lot of money on/for a new car.  
 g) Peter isn't very interested in/of basketball.  
 h) Bill likes listening to/at music late at night.

### Compound words

We can make new words by joining words.

*bath + room = bathroom*

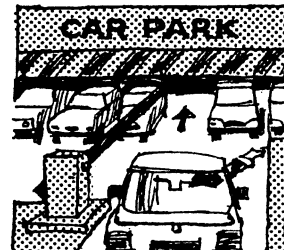
*car + park = carpark*



a car



a park



a carpark

### 5

Make a compound word from two words in the box. Then complete each sentence.

bath bike book coat home line motor case room sea shop side work suit rain under
---

- a) Tim is in the ..kathrrom..... having a shower.
- b) The weather is really bad, so take your umbrella and wear a .....
- c) Our teacher didn't give us any ..... today.
- d) Peter packed his ..... and left the hotel.
- e) We went on holiday to the ..... and swam every day.
- f) I went to the ..... to buy a new dictionary.
- g) Jane decided to .....: important words with a red pen.
- h) Kate got on her ....., and rode quickly away.

### have, make, do, take, go

### 6

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Would you like to go/have/make for a walk later?
- b) Martin said he couldn't come and did/made/took an excuse.
- c) Sue did/made/took friends with the family next door.
- d) I'm going to have/make/go a bath now.
- e) Did you do/go/make shopping yesterday?
- f) Let's do/make/take some photos of the class.
- g) I think I've done/made/taken a mistake.
- h) What time are we doing/having/taking lunch?

# Unit 90 Consolidation 13

## 1

Tick the sentence with the correct punctuation and apostrophes.

- a) 1) This ones your's, but who's got their's?  
 2) This ones yours but whos got theirs?  
 3) This one's yours, but who's got theirs? ✓
- b) 1) We got up late, had lunch, and watched television.  
 2) We got up, late had lunch, and watched television.  
 3) We got up late, had lunch and watched, television.
- c) 1) Whats the matter with David's bike?  
 2) What's the matter with David's bike?  
 3) What's the matter, with Davids's bike?
- d) 1) At the end of the film, we found the boys' coats under the seats.  
 2) At the end, of the film, we found the boys' coat's under the seats.  
 3) At the end of the film we found, the boys coats under the seats'.
- e) 1) If I were you, I'd stop using yours and try hers'.  
 2) If I, were you, I'd stop using your's and try hers.  
 3) If I were you, I'd stop using yours and try hers.
- f) 1) Jack's brother's name's Paul, isn't it?  
 2) Jack's brothers' name's Paul, isnt it?  
 3) Jack's brother's, names Paul, isn't it?
- g) 1) If any letter's come here, I'll bring them, to Sam's house.  
 2) If any letters come here, I'll bring them to Sams's house.  
 3) If any letters come here, I'll bring them to Sam's house.
- h) 1) Go down, this road, turn left, at the end, and then turn right.  
 2) Go down this road, turn left at the end, and then turn right.  
 3) Go down this road, turn left, at the end, and then turn right.

## 2

There are two spelling errors in each sentence. Correct both words.

- a) It was a lovly afternoon, so we decided to spend the day at the beech.  
 ...*lovely*.....      ...*beach*.....
- b) The holiday was so succesful that we plan to go agian next summer.  
 .....
- c) I have seen an advertisment for some holiday accomodation in the countryside.  
 .....
- d) This answer isn't quite write. I believe it should be diferent.  
 .....
- e) Last Febuary I had a wonderful time staying in my friend's vilage.  
 .....
- f) My advise would be to discuss the problem with you're doctor.  
 .....

**3**

These sentences all have spelling errors. Rewrite each sentence correctly.

- a) I was very dissapointed when I couldn't awnser the questions.  
*...I was very disappointed when I couldn't answer the questions.....*
- b) A climing holiday is diferent, but it's a bit dangerous.  
.....
- c) Fortunately, all Helen's freinds remebered her birthday.  
.....
- d) Peter trys to learn a new foriegn language every year.  
.....
- e) Are you comeing with us to the cinema tommorow?  
.....
- f) Do you beleive that people can travell through time?  
.....
- g) Jim has just writen two leters to his uncle.  
.....
- h) Oh bother! I've forgotten my keays. I'll have to go back.  
.....
- i) Carol likes walking in the countrey and seeing wild animals.  
.....
- j) Which is your faverite avertisement on television?  
.....

**4**

Put **one** word in each space to complete the phrasal verb.

- a) I'd like to try *on*..... these shoes, please.
- b) Tom grew ..... in France.
- c) Mary is looking ..... to her party.
- d) Why don't you look the word ..... in the dictionary?
- e) Jack is still in bed. He hasn't got ..... yet.
- f) What time does our plane take .....?
- g) Anna looked ..... her dog for an hour, but couldn't find it.
- h) I can't see. Can you turn .....the light?

**5**

Complete each sentence with a word made from the word in brackets.

- a) If the word is important, (line) *underline*... it.
- b) Thank you for inviting me. It was an (enjoy) ..... evening.
- c) I enjoyed this programme. It was really (interest) .....
- d) Harry was (honest) ....., and stole his friend's money.
- e) Thank you very much. You've been very (help) .....
- f) We've decided to spend two weeks at the (sea) ..... this year.
- g) Mary cried all night, and felt very (happy) .....
- h) David couldn't wait in the queue. He was too (patient) .....
- i) You can buy cheap books from that (book) .....
- j) Don't touch the lion! That's (danger) .....

Think about grammar!

- 1 Punctuation – study some of the punctuation in a story. Reading widely is the best way to learn about punctuation.
- 2 Spelling – make a list of your personal spelling problems. Study your list.



# Vocabulary

## 1 Personal details

### 1

Choose the correct word or phrase underlined in each question.

- a) What's your name/What do you call?
- b) How old/age are you?
- c) Where do you stay/live?
- d) What's your house/address?
- e) Which country do you come/live from?
- f) What's your date of birthday/birth?
- g) How long do you want to stay/pass here?
- h) Have you got a work/job?

### 2

Match the questions in exercise 1 with these answers.

- 1) 1146, Black Lion Drive ..*d.*
- 2) Three weeks .....
- 3) I'm nineteen. ....
- 4) In Los Angeles .....
- 5) No, I'm a student. ....
- 6) The United States .....
- 7) Ann-Marie Davis .....
- 8) 3 November, 1980 .....

### 3

Choose the correct word.

- a) What's Tim like? He's ...*tall*.....
  - 1) high    2) tall
- b) Ann ..... glasses.
  - 1) carries    2) wears
- c) Jane's only nine. She's .....
  - 1) young    2) new
- d) Can you ..... Peter?
  - 1) describe    2) appear
- e) How many brothers and sisters ..... you got?
  - 1) do    2) have
- f) Are you .....?
  - 1) a student    2) student
- g) Where do you ..... from?
  - 1) arrive    2) come
- h) What colour ..... your hair?
  - 1) is    2) are
- i) Are you ..... or single?
  - 1) doubled    2) married
- j) I ..... sixteen years old.
  - 1) have    2) am

4

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

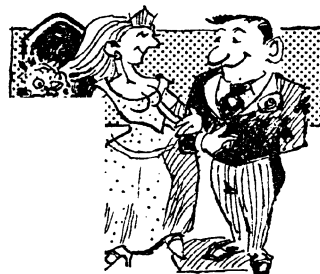
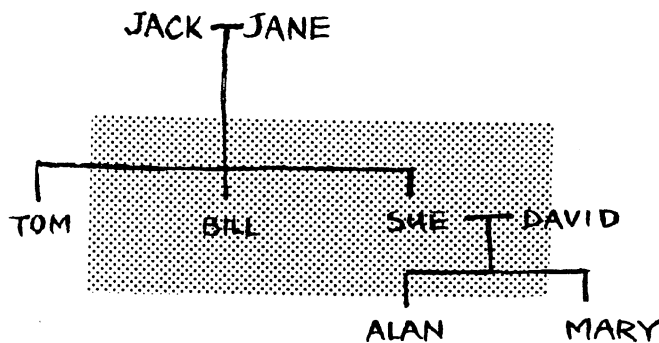
boy children family foreigner  
girl friend teenager woman

- a) Our teacher is a tall *woman*..... called Mrs Green.
- b) Is Helen your .....
- c) Who is that .....? Is it George?
- d) Has Jean got any .....
- e) How many people are there in your .....
- f) Do you know that .....? Her name's Anna.
- g) Now that I'm thirteen, I'm a .....
- h) I don't come from this country. I'm a .....

## 2 Family matters

1

Study the family tree then answer the questions.



- a) Who are Jack and Jane's children? *Tom, Bill and Sue*.....
- b) Who are Tom, Bill and Sue's parents? .....
- c) Who are Jack and Jane's sons? .....
- d) Who is Jack and Jane's daughter? .....
- e) Who is Tom's brother? .....
- f) Who is Tom and Bill's sister? .....
- g) Who is Sue's husband? .....
- h) Who is Jack's wife? .....
- i) Who is Alan and Mary's father? .....
- j) Who is Alan and Mary's grandfather? .....
- k) Who is Alan and Mary's mother? .....
- l) Who is Alan and Mary's grandmother? .....

**2**

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

brother children daughter husband  
sister son twins wife

- a) Ted and Alice were happy when Emily, their *daughter*....., was born.
- b) Harry asked Ann to be his ....., and they got married six months later.
- c) Jim and Mary's ..... David was their second child.
- d) Richard and Stephen are ....., but they don't look exactly the same.
- e) Mark and his ..... Sue went shopping with their mother.
- f) When the school bell rang, a crowd of ..... ran out of the school.
- g) Jane met her ..... Philip at a friend's wedding.
- h) Liz and her ..... Mike like listening to their grandmother's stories.

**3**

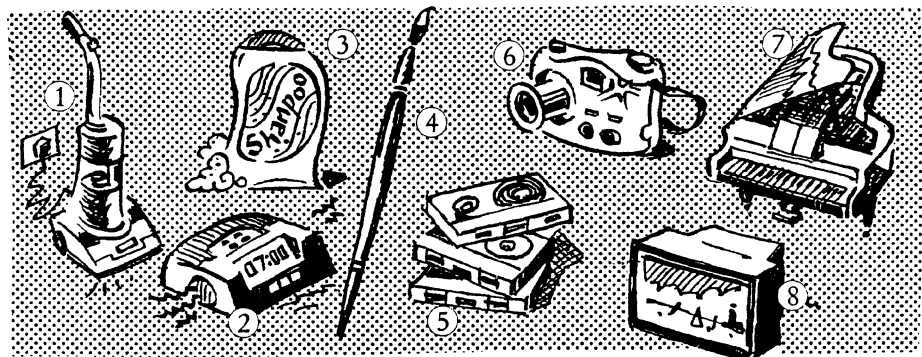
Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Christine is married (to)/with an Italian.
- b) More than fifty of Rick's parents/relatives came to the wedding.
- c) Ann is the only people/person I really like!
- d) The old/olds often think about the past.
- e) I've never met him before. He's a stranger/foreigner.
- f) I knew/met your new English teacher yesterday.
- g) Sue and her sister Mary are twins/pairs.
- h) My brother Mark is the eldest/elderly child in the family.

## 3 Free time

**1**

Match the pictures 1) to 8) with the sentences a) to h).



- |                        |       |                        |       |
|------------------------|-------|------------------------|-------|
| a) taking photos       | ..6.. | e) waking up           | ..... |
| b) doing the housework | ..... | f) washing your hair   | ..... |
| c) listening to music  | ..... | g) watching television | ..... |
| d) playing the piano   | ..... | h) painting a picture  | ..... |

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.

listening getting watching having doing making being going
---

- a) I can't stand ...getting..... up early in the morning.
- b) Steve and Ann love ..... to football matches.
- c) Jack doesn't like ..... his bed.
- d) David hates ..... to music when he is driving.
- e) I don't really like ..... alone in the house at night.
- f) Do you like ..... parties?
- g) Jane can't stand ..... the ironing.
- h) Jim likes ..... television in the kitchen.

**3**

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) Are you interested for/in photography?
- b) This is my best/favourite book. It's *David Copperfield*, by Dickens.
- c) I've decided to make/join the local swimming club.
- d) Kate usually passes/spends most of her time reading.
- e) Tim has a very interesting fun/hobby. He builds small boats.
- f) What do you like doing in your empty/spare time?
- g) Wendy is a member/team of the drama club.
- h) Sue likes going to the cinema/cinema.

**4**

Decide which answer a), b), c) or d) best fits the space.

What do you like doing best (1) ... your spare time? My cousin Paul likes going (2) ..... in the country and (3) ..... photos. Sometimes he (4) ..... with his friends, and they (5) ..... at the park or at the beach. They always (6) ..... a good time. His brother Chris isn't (7) ..... on walking. He spends most of the (8) ..... at home. His (9) ..... activity is watching television. He can't (10) ..... noisy people.

- |                  |            |            |             |
|------------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1) a) for        | b) when    | c) in      | d) at       |
| 2) a) for walks  | b) walks   | c) a walk  | d) to walk  |
| 3) a) making     | b) having  | c) taking  | d) doing    |
| 4) a) travels    | b) gets up | c) sees    | d) goes out |
| 5) a) enjoy      | b) hobby   | c) go      | d) have fun |
| 6) a) have       | b) make    | c) do      | d) like     |
| 7) a) interested | b) out     | c) decided | d) keen     |
| 8) a) other      | b) time    | c) people  | d) money    |
| 9) a) favourite  | b) happy   | c) brother | d) always   |
| 10) a) like      | b) stand   | c) be      | d) have     |

**5**

Choose the most suitable word or phrase.

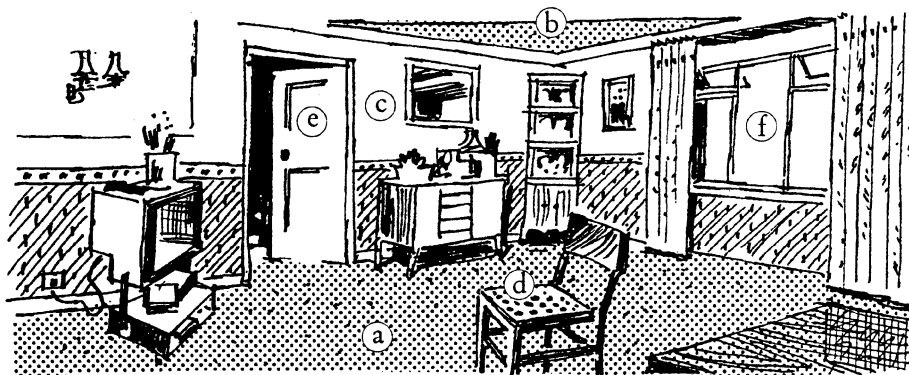
- a) You need a pencil if you want to make a ..3..
  - 1) painting
  - 2) planning
  - 3) drawing
- b) Kate's mother thinks that skateboarding is .....
- c) Sarah has a wonderful ..... collection.

- 1) danger
- 2) dangerous
- 3) in danger
- 1) stamping
- 2) stamp
- 3) stamps

- d) Does your sister play .....?  
1) the piano    2) pianos    3) a piano
- e) Carol writes pop ..... in her spare time.  
1) songs    2) sings    3) singing
- f) Harry spends a lot of time playing .....  
1) computer's games    2) games of computer    3) computer games
- g) Martin often talks to his ..... goldfish.  
1) pet    2) friendly    3) hobby
- h) Do you know how to ..... chess?  
1) make    2) play    3) game

## 4 Rooms

**1**  
Complete the labels a) to f) with a word from the box.



ceiling    chair    door    floor    wall    window

- a) .....*floor*.....    c) .....
- b) .....    d) .....    e) .....
- f) .....

**2**  
Match each word with a description.

kitchen    bedroom    living-room    bathroom    study

- a) You usually sleep in this room.    ...*bedroom*.....
- b) You sit at your desk in this room.    .....
- c) You sit on the sofa and watch television in this room.    .....
- d) You cook meals in this room.    .....
- e) You take a shower in this room.    .....

Elementary Language Practice

**3**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Don't forget to turn off/close the light when you leave.
- b) Can you shut/stop the door? It's cold in here.
- c) Jim and Tina usually have/get lunch in the kitchen.
- d) Our house is dirty because nobody likes making/doing housework.
- e) Someone is hitting/knocking at the door.
- f) Why don't you put/take a picture on this wall?
- g) Can you open/turn on the light? I can't see.
- h) Tom is living/staying with his sister for a few days.

**4**

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

armchair	bathroom	ceiling	desk
floor	furniture	upstairs	window

- a) Our house has two floors, and my bedroom is ...upstairs.....
- b) If I stand on a chair, I can touch the .....
- c) Peter does his homework at his ..... in his bedroom.
- d) I can't move in your room! There is too much .....
- e) From my ....., I can see the park at the end of the street.
- f) Kate dropped a glass on the ..... and it broke.
- g) Jack is in the ..... He's taking a shower.
- h) When I read, I like sitting in a comfortable .....

**5**

Decide which answer a), b), c) or d) best fits the space.

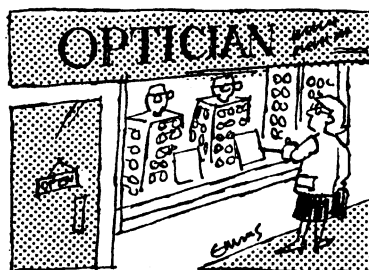
I like my house because it has lots of (1) ..h.. It's a flat, and it has a hall, a (2) ....., three bedrooms, a kitchen and a bathroom. My bedroom is small, but I can see the park from my (3) ..... I've got posters on the (4) ....., and a carpet on the (5) ..... There isn't a lot of (6) ....., just (7) ....., a bed and a (8) ..... for my clothes. I used to (9) ..... the room with my brother, but he's a student now and lives in a student (10) .....

- |                   |              |             |                    |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------------|
| 1) a) place       | b) space     | c) floors   | d) area            |
| 2) a) living-room | b) bedsit    | c) cottage  | d) saloon          |
| 3) a) door        | b) mirror    | c) curtain  | d) window          |
| 4) a) bed         | b) chair     | c) bookcase | d) walls           |
| 5) a) wall        | b) floor     | c) window   | d) ceiling         |
| 6) a) furniture   | b) table     | c) armchair | d) central heating |
| 7) a) an office   | b) a library | c) a desk   | d) a study         |
| 8) a) cupboard    | b) curtain   | c) carpet   | d) wardrobe        |
| 9) a) live        | b) part      | c) share    | d) double          |
| 10) a) hostel     | b) home      | c) college  | d) accommodation   |

# 5 Places

**1**  
Match each place with a description.

- |           |               |             |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|
| baker's   | bank          | butcher's   |
| chemist's | greengrocer's | newsagent's |
| market    | post office   |             |



- a) You can buy fresh fruit and vegetables here.   ...*greengrocer's*.....
- b) You can put money in your account here.   .....
- c) You can buy things outside in the street here.   .....
- d) You can buy medicine here.   .....
- e) You can buy bread and cakes here.   .....
- f) You can buy meat here.   .....
- g) You can buy stamps, and send letters here.   .....
- h) You can buy magazines and sweets here.   .....

**2**  
Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Have you been to Grimton? It's not a very nice part/place.
- b) It's good to get away from the city and visit the field/country.
- c) Paris is the head/capital of France.
- d) You can get a bus from here to the city central/centre.
- e) Would you rather live in a city, a small town or a villa/village?
- f) When you leave the land/country, you have to show your passport.
- g) David comes from a small centre/town in Wales.
- h) Everest is the highest mountain in the world/earth.

**3**  
Choose the correct word or phrase.

- a) Excuse me, how do I .....*get*..... to the post office from here?  
1) find    2) get    3) come
- b) When you come to the end of the street, turn .....  
1) to left    2) left    3) the left
- c) Could you tell me the ..... to the bus station, please?  
1) road    2) direction    3) way
- d) I don't know where we are. I'm completely .....  
1) lost    2) missed    3) absent
- e) ..... the next turning on the right.  
1) Make    2) Go    3) Take
- f) How ..... is it from here to the museum?  
1) far    2) distance    3) journey
- g) Go ..... at the traffic lights.  
1) over    2) straight on    3) through
- h) The cinema is ..... the left.  
1) on    2) at    3) by

4

Match each word in the box with a description.

block of flats station cinema hotel library  
 police station restaurant theatre

- a) You can ask for help here. ....*police station*.....
- b) You can stay here. ....
- c) You can borrow books from here. ....
- d) You can watch a film here. ....
- e) You can catch a train here. ....
- f) You can see a play here. ....
- g) You can live here. ....
- h) You can have dinner here. ....

## 6 Jobs

1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Mark works for an Australian job/company.
- b) Ann got a job in an office as a typewriter/typist.
- c) When I had toothache I went to the doctor's/dentist's.
- d) Bob trained as an electrician/electric.
- e) My mother used to work as a cook/cooker in a school.
- f) Do you like our new English teacher/professor?
- g) The police was/were waiting for Jim outside the bank.
- h) Helen has found a work/job in a bank.



2

Choose the best ending from 1) to 8) for each sentence a) to h).

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| a) The mechanic ..7.   | 1) milked the cows.                          |
| b) The carpenter ..... | 2) sent the thief to prison.                 |
| c) The vet .....       | 3) gave Lisa some medicine for her sick cat. |
| d) The judge .....     | 4) brought Ann a drink on a tray.            |
| e) The plumber .....   | 5) repaired the table and chairs.            |
| f) The farmer .....    | 6) made Paul's new suit.                     |
| g) The tailor .....    | 7) repaired my car.                          |
| h) The steward .....   | 8) fixed the broken pipe in the bathroom.    |



**3**

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

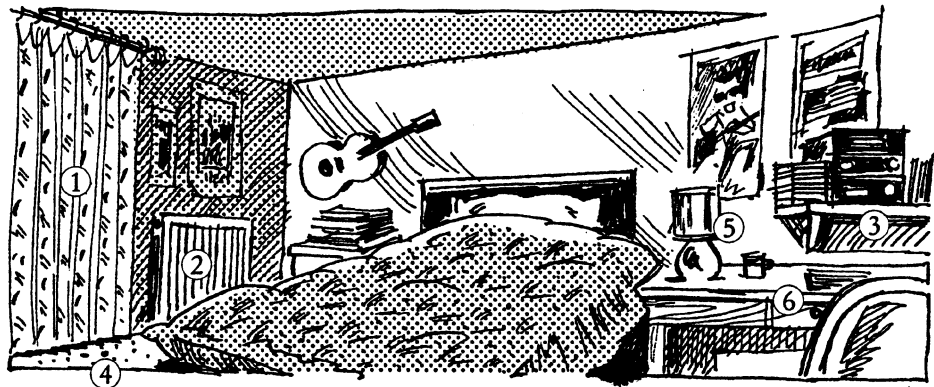
actor architect electrician gardener lawyer  
musician nurse sailor scientist soldier

- a) Sam's new house was designed by a well-known ...*architect*.....
- b) After he was arrested, Paul was allowed to phone his .....
- c) Being a/an ..... is enjoyable, until there is a war.
- d) A/an ..... looked after Bob when he was in hospital.
- e) When all the lights went out, the manager called a/an .....
- f) Once a week, a/an ..... comes and cuts the grass.
- g) Helen trained as a/an ..... and now plays in an orchestra.
- h) Ann is a famous ..... and works at a university.
- i) The best ..... in the play played the part of the King.
- j) David didn't enjoy being a/an ..... because he got seasick.

## 7 Inside the house

**1**

Match the objects in the picture with the words a) to f).



- a) carpet ~~✓~~    b) curtain .....    c) lamp .....    d) radiator .....
- e) shelf .....    f) table .....

**2**

Tick the things you usually find in each room.

- a) kitchen
  - 1) cooker ✓    2) sofa    3) bath    4) fridge ✓
- b) bedroom
  - 1) blanket    2) dustbin    3) wardrobe    4) pillow
- c) living-room
  - 1) washing machine    2) armchair    3) carpet    4) table
- d) bathroom
  - 1) mirror    2) television    3) bookshelf    4) shower

**3**

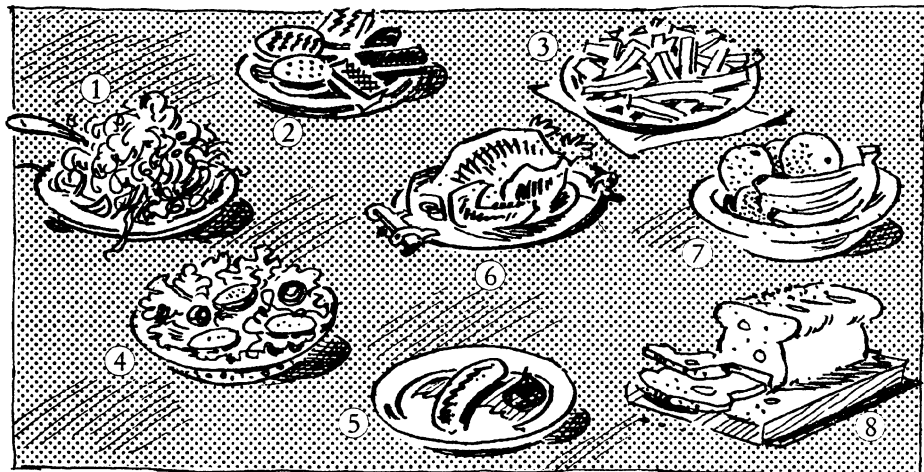
Choose the most suitable word.

- a) To stop the light coming in the window we need some ...*curtains*....  
1) curtains    2) radiators    3) shelves
- b) It's very cold. Why don't you turn on the .....?  
1) central heating    2) cooker    3) stove
- c) In the evening I like to relax in .....  
1) a chair    2) a seat    3) an armchair
- d) Laura sat at her ..... and turned on her computer.  
1) study    2) desk    3) office
- e) My school books are in the ..... in the living-room.  
1) library    2) bookcase    3) bookshelf
- f) There was a lovely fire burning in the .....  
1) chimney    2) central heating    3) fireplace
- g) You can wash your hands in the ..... in the bathroom.  
1) basin    2) shower    3) tap
- h) The biscuits are in the ..... in the kitchen.  
1) table    2) shelf    3) cupboard

## 8 Food and drink

**1**

Match the words and the pictures.



- a) some biscuits ..2.    e) some fruit .....
- b) some bread .....
- c) a chicken .....
- d) some chips .....
- f) a salad .....
- g) a sausage .....
- h) some spaghetti .....

**2**

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

breakfast take-away dinner food lunch  
meal menu picnic snack course

- a) When I get hungry and feel like a *...snack.....*, I eat an apple.
- b) The waiter gave us the ..... and we chose our meals.
- c) A good ..... is the best way of starting the day.
- d) Peter has to take medicine an hour before every .....
- e) I'm meeting Carol for ..... at 1.30, so I'll be back late this afternoon.
- f) ..... is served every evening in the hotel dining-room.
- g) Michael really loves Greek .....
- h) We took some fruit and sandwiches and had a ..... on the beach.
- i) Helen didn't have time to cook so she phoned for a .....
- j) After the starter we ordered our main .....

**3**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Boil/Cook some water, and pour it into the cup.
- b) We usually bake/fry the fish in oil.
- c) At the end of the meal we paid the menu/bill.
- d) I always buy fresh food because I don't like iced/frozen food.
- e) Lisa doesn't eat meat. She's a vegetable/vegetarian.
- f) Don't forget to put the meal/the food in the fridge.
- g) When the food is made/done, take it out of the oven.
- h) Could we have some more bread/loaf please?
- i) The cook/cooker put the meat in the oven.
- j) Jack bought a fresh chicken/kitchen from the supermarket.

**4**

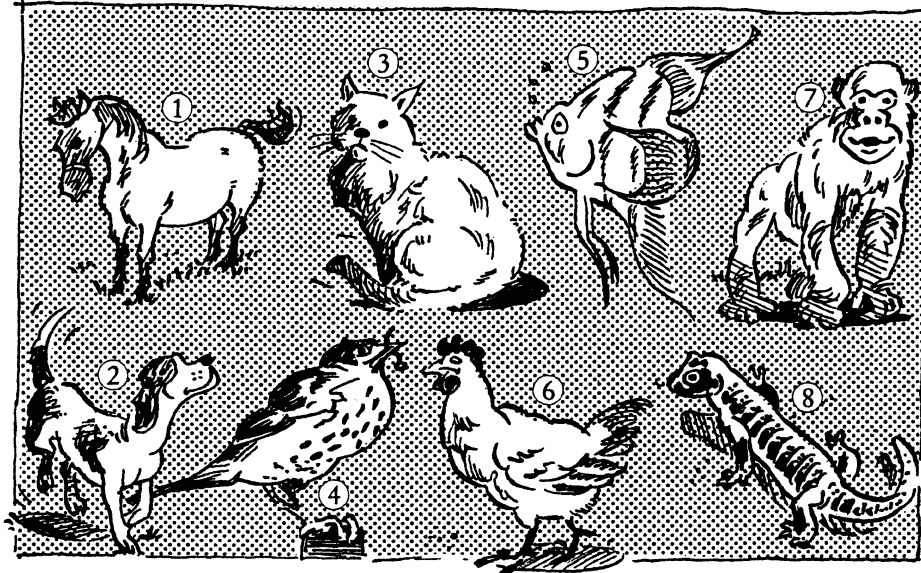
Match each word in the box with a description.

cup jug fork knife napkin saucer  
plate spoon straw tray

- a) You can eat soup with this. *...spoon.....*
- b) You can suck drinks through this. ....
- c) You put food on this and eat from it. ....
- d) You can carry things on this. ....
- e) You can cut meat with this. ....
- f) You drink tea or coffee from this. ....
- g) During meals, you can clean your hands with this or put it on your lap. ....
- h) You can carry food to your mouth with this. ....
- i) You can pour water from this. ....
- j) This usually goes under your cup. ....

# 9 Animals

**1**  
Match the words  
and the pictures.



- |            |        |          |       |           |       |
|------------|--------|----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| a) bird    | ...4.. | d) dog   | ..... | g) lizard | ..... |
| b) cat     | .....  | e) fish  | ..... | h) monkey | ..... |
| c) chicken | .....  | f) horse | ..... |           |       |

**2**  
Choose the  
correct word  
underlined.

- Can you take/run the dog for a walk, please?
- This is my pet/toy lizard, Larry.
- When someone knocks at the door, the dog shouts/barks.
- Some birds can run/fly for thousands of kilometres.
- Lions and tigers are wild/country animals.
- Do you know how to ride/drive a horse?
- Monkeys are good at climbing/living trees.
- Helen has two birds, and feeds/eats them every day.

**3**  
Complete each  
sentence with a  
word from the  
box.

bite catch hunt jump like live make sing

- Don't worry! The dog won't ..bite..... you.
- Monkeys can ..... from one tree to another.
- Fish can't ..... out of water.
- Parrots ..... a lot of noise.
- Not many people ..... snakes.
- Most birds ..... in the morning.
- Cats usually ..... at night and sleep during the day.
- You can use a net or a hook to ..... a fish.

4

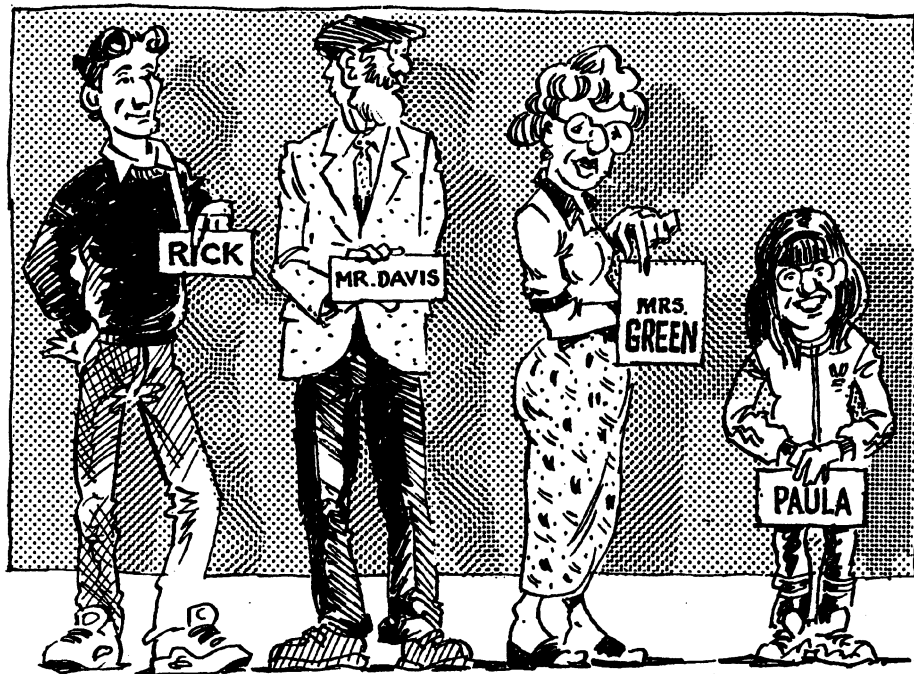
Choose the best ending from 1) to 8) for each sentence a) to h).

- |                                |                                       |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a) A small blue fish ...Z..    | 1) laid an egg in the kitchen.        |
| b) The fat white cat .....     | 2) barked when I knocked at the door. |
| c) The friendly horse .....    | 3) was green and two metres long.     |
| d) Mickey Mouse .....          | 4) flew across the garden.            |
| e) Suddenly a small bird ..... | 5) went to sleep on the armchair.     |
| f) Mary's pet chicken .....    | 6) ate some grass from Tim's hand.    |
| g) A large black dog .....     | 7) was swimming in the glass bowl.    |
| h) The snake .....             | 8) was the star of many cartoons.     |

## 10 Clothes

1

Look at the picture and read the descriptions. Then write the names.



- |  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| a) She's middle-aged and she's wearing a skirt.    | ...Mrs Green..... |
| b) He's got a beard.                               | .....             |
| c) She's got long hair and glasses.                | .....             |
| d) He's wearing jeans and a pullover.              | .....             |
| e) She's wearing a tracksuit.                      | .....             |
| f) He's wearing a suit.                            | .....             |
| g) She's wearing ear-rings.                        | .....             |
| h) He's old and he's tall, and he's wearing a hat. | .....             |

Elementary Language Practice

**2**

Match each word in the box with a description.

belt costume ear-ring glove  
hat overcoat sock underwear

- a) You put one of these on each foot. ...*sock*.....
- b) You wear this over your clothes in cold weather. .....
- c) You wear this on your head. .....
- d) This stops your trousers falling down. .....
- e) You wear this in your ear. .....
- f) You wear one of these on each hand in cold weather. .....
- g) You wear this when you go swimming. .....
- h) You wear this under your clothes. .....

**3**

Choose the correct words.

- a) Maria usually ~~wears~~ sports clothes.  
1) wears    2) carries    3) dresses
- b) I don't like these shoes. They hurt my .....  
1) hands    2) arms    3) feet
- c) Peter always wears a tie and a white .....  
1) shirt    2) blouse    3) skirt
- d) Helen went to the shops and bought .....  
1) a trouser    2) a pair of trousers    3) two trousers
- e) David has decided to buy .....  
1) a new cloth    2) a new dress    3) new clothes
- f) This coat is the wrong ..... It's too big.  
1) size    2) large    3) number
- g) Your clothes are wet! I think you should ..... them off.  
1) dress    2) take    3) wear
- h) When it's hot, I usually wear ..... and a t-shirt.  
1) shorts    2) a short    3) short ones

**4**

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

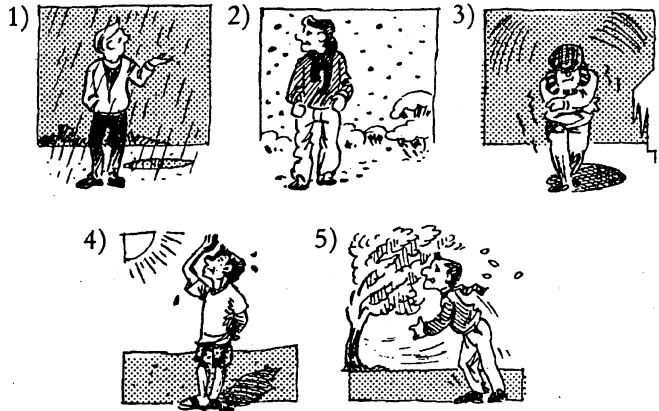
assistant bargain counter customer  
label sale size shoplifter

- a) Peter bought his jacket cheap in a ..... *sale* .....
- b) These shoes are ..... 44. Are they big enough for you?
- c) Kevin left his wallet on the ..... when he paid for his trousers.
- d) The ..... says this dress is size 10, but I think it's smaller.
- e) Jane forgot to pay for the shirt, and she was arrested for being a  
.....
- f) I only paid £5 for these shoes! They were a .....
- g) Emma had to wait while the assistant served another .....
- h) Helen asked the ..... to help her choose a skirt.

# 11 Weather

**1**  
Match the pictures with the sentences.

- a) It's hot. ....
- b) It's snowing. ....
- c) It's windy. ....
- d) It's raining. ....
- e) It's cold. ....



**2**  
Choose the correct word.

- a) The sky was full of dark *clouds*....  
1) clouds    2) rain
- b) Before the storm started, we heard .....  
1) booming    2) thunder
- c) It was very cold and the river was .....  
1) frozen    2) iced
- d) It won't rain for a long time. It's only a .....  
1) shower    2) bath
- e) When the wind ....., all the trees move.  
1) whistles    2) blows
- f) We sat on the beach and enjoyed the .....  
1) sunshine    2) sunburn
- g) It started raining, and everyone got .....  
1) watery    2) wet
- h) The ship did not leave because there was a .....  
1) shower    2) storm

**3**  
Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

freezing lightning rain raining  
snowing snow sunny windy

- a) As it's *raining* ....., take your umbrella.
- b) If it's ..... tomorrow, we'll go to the beach.
- c) Suddenly there was a flash of ..... and then loud thunder.
- d) I'm .....! Can I borrow a thick pullover?
- e) It was very ..... yesterday so Jim flew his kite.
- f) We had very heavy ..... yesterday and I got very wet.
- g) Look, it's .....! All the cars are white!
- h) The road across the mountains is blocked with .....

# 12 The body

## 1

Look at the picture and complete the labels a) to j) with a word from the box.



arm	ear	eye	finger	foot
hair	hand	leg	mouth	nose

- a) mouth      c) .....      e) .....      g) .....      i) .....  
 b) .....      d) .....      f) .....      h) .....      j) .....

## 2

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Horses have got four legs/arms.  
 b) The little girl was holding her mother's foot/hand.  
 c) Tony always lies on his back/head when he sleeps.  
 d) Gina has beautiful long ears/hair.  
 e) Jack has got a cold and his knee/nose is red.  
 f) Anna can't write because she has broken two fingers/shoulders.  
 g) A giraffe has got a very long mouth/neck.  
 h) I've got five fingers/toes on each foot.

## 3

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

arm	ear	eye	foot	hand	head	leg	waist
-----	-----	-----	------	------	------	-----	-------

- a) Peter broke his leg..... and couldn't walk for a month.  
 b) When David met Mrs Greenwood, he shook her .....  
 c) I tried on the shoe but my ..... got stuck!  
 d) I can't see! I've got something in my .....  
 e) The teacher was carrying a lot of books under his .....  
 f) I need new trousers, because my ..... is getting bigger!  
 g) My ..... feels cold in winter, so I wear a hat.  
 h) Our teacher's words go in one ..... and out the other!



# 13 Staying healthy

## 1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) I can't see! There is something wrong with my left ear/eye.
- b) I couldn't wash because there wasn't any soap/soup.
- c) The doctor told me that I have to have/do an operation.
- d) These shoes are too small for me. I've got wide feet/legs.
- e) I didn't go to school because I had cold/a cold.
- f) Mary decided to do/have a hot bath.
- g) Peter is ill/bad and has gone to the doctor's.
- h) Don't forget to wash/clean your hands!

## 2

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

bleeding	broken	dangerous	fit
healthy	injured	sore	well

- a) A ...*healthy*..... diet includes lots of fruit and vegetables.
- b) John is very ill and won't come to school until he is .....
- c) Helen's leg was ..... so the doctor put it in plaster for a month.
- d) It is ..... to take more than four of these tablets in 24 hours.
- e) George has cut his hand and it's .....
- f) David keeps ..... by doing exercises in the gym twice a week.
- g) Edward walked all day in his new boots, and now his feet are .....
- h) The bus crashed into a tree, but luckily nobody was .....

## 3

Choose the correct word.

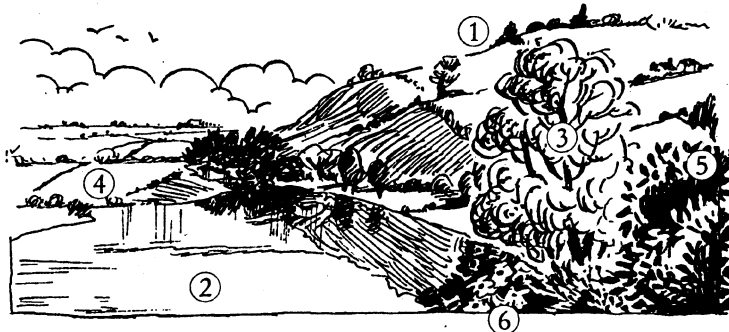
- a) I've got a ...*pain*..... in my leg.
  - 1) hurt    2) pain    3) damage
- b) Tom was very ill, and had to go to .....
  - 1) hospital    2) medicine    3) doctor
- c) George broke his leg in a/an .....
  - 1) chance    2) problem    3) accident
- d) Kate had a ..... of 41°.
  - 1) temperature    2) heat    3) thermometer
- e) Ellen stayed at home because she didn't feel very .....
  - 1) ill    2) well    3) better
- f) Little Jimmy was crying because he had a/an .....
  - 1) ill ear    2) earache    3) ear pain
- g) The doctor didn't expect his poor ..... to pay a lot.
  - 1) patients    2) customers    3) users
- h) When Michael ....., everyone said, 'Bless you!'
  - 1) hurt    2) fell    3) sneezed

# 14 The world around us

## 1

Match the things in the picture with the words a) to f).

- a) bush ..5.
- b) field .....
- c) flower .....
- d) lake .....
- e) hill .....
- f) tree .....



## 2

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Go along this road and up the hill/mountain at the end.
- b) We travelled down the river/stream by boat to the sea.
- c) Beside the road there were fields/gardens full of animals and plants.
- d) Helen spent her holiday on a small Greek island/land.
- e) The boys camped next to a small lake/ocean in Scotland.
- f) The children enjoyed playing on the beach/seaside.
- g) Kate stayed in a small village in the country/outside.
- h) From the ship, Mark could see the distant coast/side of France.

## 3

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) Sarah spent the summer at/on/to an island.
- b) There is a castle at/in/above the top of the hill.
- c) It was cold so I didn't put my feet on/in/to the water.
- d) At midday, we sat at/below/under a tree and had a picnic.
- e) Caroline spent a lovely day at/on/in the seaside.
- f) Would you like to have lunch in/on/next to the garden?
- g) George and his friends camped in/on/under the beach.
- h) We decided to have a weekend at/in/with the country.

## 4

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

beach field forest hill island mountain river sea

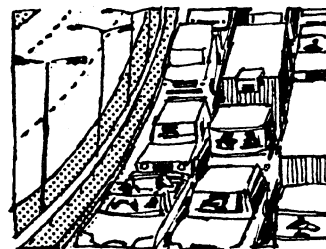
- a) We couldn't cross the river because there wasn't a bridge.
- b) At the back of the farm was a large ..... with five horses.
- c) Most fish live in the .....
- d) Maria climbed the ..... and looked down from the top.
- e) The hill was covered with a thick ..... of tall trees.
- f) Tina lived on a small ..... in the middle of the Aegean Sea.
- g) Our school is on the top of a small .....
- h) After his swim, Jim rested on the .....

# 15 Transport

## 1

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- The bus to the shops leaves from the station/(stop) outside our house.
- Sue got into/onto her car and drove away.
- Enjoy your travel/trip! I'll see you next week!
- It's much quicker to go by/on foot.
- I'd like a back/return ticket to London, please.
- Jane arrives home/at home at 4.00.
- What time does the train leave/part?
- If you don't hurry, we'll lose/miss the bus.



## 2

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- There was a notice at the airport which said, '*...Welcome.....* to Greece.'  
1) Well come    2) Well came    3) Welcome
- We missed the train so we decided to ..... a bus.  
1) go    2) get    3) have
- Jim's ..... to Argentina left at 6.00.  
1) fly    2) flight    3) flying
- As the bus left, Helen's friends said, 'Have a good .....'  
1) journey    2) travel    3) voyage
- Carol ..... to Birmingham on the motorway.  
1) ran    2) drove    3) led
- Excuse me. What time does this train ..... London?  
1) arrive    2) reach    3) come
- Could you tell me the ..... to the bus-station?  
1) street    2) path    3) way
- I got on the bus and bought my .....  
1) ticket    2) paper    3) cheque

## 3

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

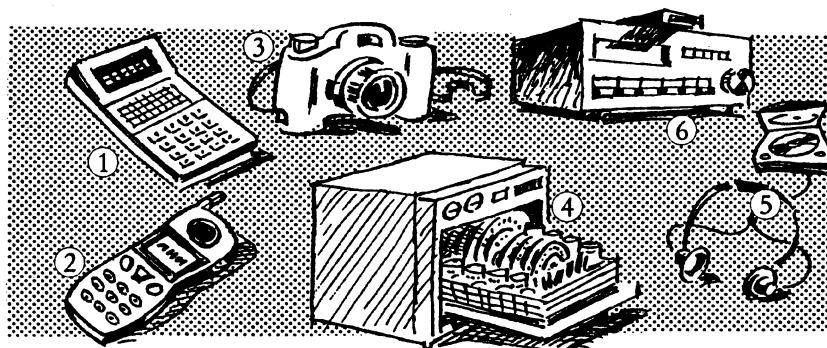
bike   boat   bus   car   plane   ship   taxi   train
---

- When the *...plane.....* took off, Tom felt nervous.
- Ann's ..... broke down while she was driving on the motorway.
- Peter enjoyed his voyage across the Atlantic in an old sailing .....
- Tina got off her ..... and pushed it up the hill.
- Carlos saw the sights of London from the top of a double-decker .....
- Helen and Sue hired a ..... and rowed across the lake.
- When the ..... came into the station, Kate was waiting.
- Joe saw a ..... coming down the street. He shouted, and it stopped.

# 16 Useful things

## 1

Match the words and explanations with the pictures.



- a) calculator ..1.      c) camera .....      e) video recorder .....
- b) dishwasher .....      d) mobile phone .....      f) personal stereo .....

- a) You can use this to make copies of television programmes. ....*video recorder...*
- b) You can take interesting photos with this. ....
- c) You can make calls from this, wherever you are. ....
- d) You can do the washing-up with this. ....
- e) This helps you if you have problems with maths. ....
- f) You can take music with you everywhere with this. ....

## 2

Choose the correct words underlined in each sentence.

- a) My pen/pencil is broken. Have you got a sharpener?
- b) Ann couldn't cut Mary's hair because she didn't have any knife/scissors.
- c) We can't get in. The door is locked/closed, and I haven't got a key.
- d) When the lights went out/closed, Jan couldn't see a thing.
- e) Put the dirty clothes in the washing/wash machine.
- f) Dave has got a bad cold and needs some tissues/papers.
- g) If you want to draw a straight line, use a file/ruler.
- h) There's a clock/watch on the wall over there.

## 3

Choose the most suitable word or phrase.

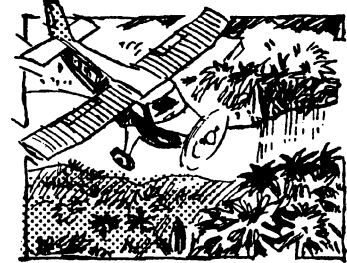
- a) Terry put a large ...*bowl*..... full of apples on the table.  
1) envelope    2) saucer    3) bowl
- b) Jim put some oil into the ..... and cooked the eggs in it.  
1) frying pan    2) cooker    3) bowl
- c) Can you turn on the .....? I can't see very well.  
1) candle    2) lamp    3) bulb
- d) Kate filled the ..... with water, and boiled some potatoes.  
1) oven    2) kettle    3) saucepan
- e) Do you want your coffee in a cup or a .....?  
1) mug    2) plastic    3) jar
- f) Paul had a cup of coffee in one hand and a ..... of cakes in the other.  
1) pan    2) saucer    3) plate

# 17 Other countries

## 1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) You usually need a passport/permission to go from one country to another.
- b) Have you ever been to a stranger/foreign country?
- c) Europe and Asia are both countries/continents.
- d) Have you got a map/plan of Germany?
- e) We all enjoy singing/eating our National Anthem.
- f) Most people would like to travel outside/abroad.
- g) What is your national meal/dish? Ours is spaghetti!
- h) I've always wanted to take a trip/travel to South America.



## 2

Complete each sentence with *in*, *to* or *at*.

- a) Have you ever been *to* Turkey?
- b) What time does our plane arrive *in* Paris?
- c) I met an old friend *at* Frankfurt Airport.
- d) Is Milan *in* the south of Italy?
- e) It's very cold *in* Poland at the moment.
- f) Cathy has decided to go *to* Spain for a holiday.
- g) Anna lives *in* Slovenia.
- h) Tim is studying *at* London University.

## 3

Match the countries with the people.

- |            |            |           |             |
|------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1) Norway  | 2) Hungary | 3) Mexico | 4) Holland  |
| 5) Ireland | 6) Sweden  | 7) Egypt  | 8) Scotland |
- 
- a) The Dutch *are*
  - b) The Norwegians *are*
  - c) The Swedes *are*
  - d) The Scots *are*
  - e) The Mexicans *are*
  - f) The Hungarians *are*
  - g) The Irish *are*
  - h) The Egyptians *are*

## 4

Complete the list.

- a) I'm *Italian*..... I come from Italy.
- b) I'm *Spanish*..... I come from Spain.
- c) I'm ..... I come from Germany.
- d) I'm ..... I come from France.
- e) I'm ..... I come from Greece.
- f) I'm ..... I come from Brazil.
- g) I'm ..... I come from Switzerland.
- h) I'm ..... I come from Turkey.
- i) I'm ..... I come from Poland.
- j) I'm ..... I come from Argentina.

## 18 In the classroom

### 1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) I have to read/study hard because I have a test tomorrow.
- b) If you don't understand a word, look it out/look it up in a dictionary.
- c) Please do the rest of this exercise for homework/housework.
- d) Mrs Jackson learns/teaches us geography.
- e) At the end of the lesson, put the books back on the bookshelf/library.
- f) Paul tried hard/hardly this year, and made progress.
- g) Why were you absent/off yesterday, Angela?
- h) Jim lost/failed the maths test.

### 2

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- a) Could you tell me what *...this word means...?*
  - 1) does this word mean    2) means this word    3) this word means
- b) What's the difference ..... 'say' and 'tell' ?
  - 1) between    2) of    3) from
- c) If you don't know the answer, ..... a guess.
  - 1) do    2) make    3) say
- d) Please pay ..... to what I am saying.
  - 1) meaning    2) knowledge    3) attention
- e) If you're not sure, ..... a question.
  - 1) make    2) ask    3) do
- f) I don't understand. Can you give me a/an .....?
  - 1) example    2) sample    3) model
- g) Please ..... yourself, John.
  - 1) behaving    2) behaviour    3) behave
- h) I'm sorry, but I don't ..... the question.
  - 1) know    2) understand    3) realise

### 3

Complete each sentence with a verb from the box.

copy   explain   fail   have   make   mean practise   share   take   underline
---

- a) We have to *...share...* books because there aren't enough for one each.
- b) Don't worry if you ..... the exam. You can take it again in December.
- c) I must remember to ..... this book back to the library today.
- d) During the exam, Jack tried to ..... Sarah's work.
- e) Some teachers don't ..... things very clearly.
- f) What exactly does this word .....?
- g) We didn't ..... a history lesson today, because our teacher was ill.
- h) It's a good idea to ..... important words with a pencil.
- i) If you don't ..... a foreign language, you soon forget it.
- j) I can't ..... up my mind about the answer to this question.

## 4

Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

attendance	break	class	lesson	notes
project	subject	term	timetable	uniform

- We had an interesting .....*lesson*..... today about Ancient Egypt.
- At the end of the ..... our teachers write reports about us.
- Please make ..... as you read chapter two.
- This is a very small ..... There are only eight students.
- Kate's ..... been good. She has only missed one lesson.
- Our ..... has changed, and now we have English on Monday at 11 o'clock.
- The boys usually play football outside when they have a .....
- Chris has to wear a ..... at his new school.
- Physics was Rebecca's favourite ..... when she was at school.
- I went to the library to find some information for my history .....

## 19 Going out

## 1

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- Why don't we write/record our song on tape?
- Do you want to come for swimming/swimming tomorrow?
- All the girls in the group are very good singers/songs.
- Would you like/want to play basketball?
- George and I are to going to the cinema/the cinema this afternoon.
- Ann loves listening to classical/classic music.
- The children saw a Mickey Mouse cartoon/comic at the cinema.
- In the World Cup, Italy beat/won Germany 2-0.
- Do you want to go a walk/for a walk this evening?
- Jack excused/made an excuse, and said he couldn't come to the party.

## 2

Make a compound word by adding a word from the box. More than one answer may be possible.

club	court	field	pool	stadium	track
------	-------	-------	------	---------	-------

- health .....*club*.....
- football .....
- tennis .....
- running .....
- swimming .....
- playing .....

Elementary Language Practice

**3**

Now match each activity with one of the compound nouns in exercise 2.

- a) an exercise programme ..... *health club* .....
- b) diving competition .....
- c) a marathon .....
- d) a doubles match .....
- e) schools sports .....
- f) a cup final .....

**4**

Decide which answer a), b), c) or d) best fits the space.

Last week I phoned one of my friends. 'Why don't you (1) *h.* to my house?' he said. 'We can play some computer games, if you (2) ..... 'I don't feel (3) ..... doing that,' I said. 'How about (4) ..... fishing?' He wasn't very (5) ..... on the idea, so we decided to (6) ..... to the cinema, although we didn't know what was (7) ..... When we (8) ..... there, it was a science fiction film, and so we (9) ..... our minds. We can't (10) ..... that kind of film.

- 1) a) turn up      b) come round      c) cross over      d) go past
- 2) a) know      b) can      c) do      d) like
- 3) a) for      b) I'm      c) like      d) well
- 4) a) the      b) going      c) a      d) it
- 5) a) interested      b) much      c) keen      d) liking
- 6) a) go      b) pass      c) see      d) try
- 7) a) on      b) it      c) there      d) playing
- 8) a) reached      b) were      c) saw      d) got
- 9) a) discussed      b) changed      c) made      d) found
- 10) a) like      b) hate      c) stand      d) admire

## 20 Shopping around

**1**

Choose the correct word underlined in each sentence.

- a) I think these trousers are the wrong size/number for me.
- b) Helen wants to buy/take some new shoes.
- c) Thank you very much. This is your recipe/receipt.
- d) I'd like to buy this coat, but it costs a lot of money/cash.
- e) I saw some red shoes in the window. Can I try/have them on?
- f) I'm sorry, but the shop closes/ends in five minutes.
- g) Could I have a small white bread/loaf, please?
- h) Please name/sign on this line.
- i) Could you put these things in a bag/sack, please?
- j) Excuse me, could you tell me how much this costs/prices?



**2**

Choose the best reply 1) to 10) for each sentence a) to j).

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| a) Can I help you?           | 1) Yes, the changing room is over there. |
| b) Have you got size 7?      | 2) At 5.30 today.                        |
| c) How much is this?         | 3) Try this larger one.                  |
| d) Can I try this on?        | 4) It doesn't go with your coat.         |
| e) Do you take credit cards? | 5) I'm afraid we don't have any left.    |
| f) This one doesn't fit.     | 6) No, I've spent every penny I had!     |
| g) Have you got any money?   | 7) Did you buy it here?                  |
| h) Do you like this red one? | 8) No thanks, I'm just looking.          |
| i) Can I return this?        | 9) Sorry, only cash or cheques.          |
| j) What time do you close?   | 10) It's £8.95.                          |

**3**

Choose the most suitable word or phrase.

- a) Why don't we get a ..... *bottle* ..... of mineral water?  
 1) bottle    2) jar    3) bag
- b) Why don't we buy Julia a ..... of flowers?  
 1) bunch    2) pile    3) crowd
- c) I need a ..... of toothpaste.  
 1) box    2) packet    3) tube
- d) Don't forget to buy Wendy a ..... of chocolate.  
 1) lump    2) bar    3) cube
- e) I'd like ..... cheese, please.  
 1) half a kilo of    2) half kilo    3) half kilo of
- f) Could you buy me two ..... of biscuits?  
 1) packets    2) parcels    3) containers
- g) I've decided to buy a new ..... of shoes.  
 1) couple    2) pair    3) double
- h) We need a ..... of matches.  
 1) bag    2) box    3) bunch

**4**

Decide which answer, a), b), c) or d), best fits the space.

Nowadays lots of people drive to large supermarkets to (1) *d.* their shopping. These supermarkets have (2) ....., so you can buy several (3) ..... of shopping. You can fill your (4) ....., and then push it to your car. Some people prefer to use (5) ..... shops. These small shops are usually more (6) ..... than supermarkets. Some towns have an open air (7) ..... in the centre, where you can buy (8) ..... fruit and (9) ....., but you have to (10) ..... your shopping home.

- |               |              |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1) a) make    | b) take      | c) have       | d) do        |
| 2) a) cars    | b) car-parks | c) places     | d) roads     |
| 3) a) bags    | b) shops     | c) customers  | d) bargains  |
| 4) a) pocket  | b) bag       | c) trolley    | d) wallet    |
| 5) a) sale    | b) local     | c) centre     | d) various   |
| 6) a) cheaper | b) often     | c) parking    | d) expensive |
| 7) a) place   | b) sale      | c) square     | d) market    |
| 8) a) cheap   | b) the       | c) there      | d) a         |
| 9) a) fishes  | b) meats     | c) vegetables | d) green     |
| 10) a) walk   | b) carry     | c) manage     | d) with      |

## Formation rules

### 1

#### Tenses

##### Present simple

positive:	I/you/we/they like	he/she/it likes
negative:	you don't like	he doesn't like
question:	Do you like...?	Does he like...?

##### Present continuous

positive:	I am going.	You/we/they are going.
	He/she/it is going.	
negative:	I am not going.	You aren't going.
	She isn't going.	
question:	Am I going?	Are you going?
	Is she going?	

##### Present perfect

positive:	I/you/we/they have left.	He/she/it has left.
negative:	They haven't left.	He hasn't left.
question:	Have they left?	Has he left?

##### Past simple

1 Regular	positive:	I/you/he/she/it/we/they started.
	negative:	You didn't start.
	question:	Did you start?
2 Irregular	positive:	I/you/he/she/it/we/they went.
	negative:	You didn't go.
	question:	Did you go?

##### Past continuous

positive:	I/he/she/it was going.	You/we/they were going.
negative:	You weren't going.	She wasn't going.
question:	Were you going?	Was she going?

### 2

#### Reported Speech

##### Direct

'I always drink milk.'  
'I'm leaving.'  
'I'll be back soon.'  
'I've forgotten it.'  
'I took it.'  
'I was reading.'

##### Reported

He said (that) he always drank milk.  
She said (that) she was leaving.  
He said (that) he would be back soon.  
She said (that) she had forgotten it.  
He said (that) he had taken it.  
She said (that) she had been reading.

### 3

#### Passive Tenses

##### Active

He helps.  
He has helped.  
He helped.  
He will help.

##### Passive

He is helped.  
He has been helped.  
He was helped.  
He will be helped.

## Irregular verbs

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forgive	forgave	forgiven
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known

Elementary Language Practice

lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shoot	shot	shot
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

## Grammar index

- A/an/any* 44, 45  
 Ability 36, 39  
*Able to* 36  
 Adjectives 73, 74, 75, 76, 83  
 Adverbs 8, 78  
 Advice 30, 50, 67  
 Advising 30, 50, 67  
*After* 27  
*Ago* 20  
 Agreeing/disagreeing 50  
*Already* 20  
*Anyone, anybody, anything* 62  
 Apologizing 50  
 Apostrophes 72, 85  
 Articles  
   *a/an, the* 59  
   zero 60  
 Asking for information 52  
*Be*  
   *am, is, are* 1  
   *was, were* 12  
   with adjectives and prepositions 83  
*Be able to* 36  
*Been and gone* 20  
*Can* 36, 53  
*Can't, cannot* 36, 40  
 Certainty 40  
*Come* [*swimming*, etc.] 81  
 Comparative adjectives 75  
 Compound words 89  
 Conditional sentences  
   1 29, 31  
   2 30, 31  
 Contractions, *it's, they're, I'm, I've, he's*, etc. 69  
*Could* 39, 40, 53  
 Countable and uncountable nouns 44, 45, 46, 47  
 Dates 54  
 Days, months, seasons 54  
 Decisions 24  
 Descriptions 51  
 Direct speech 64  
 Directions 51  
 Disagreeing/agreeing 50  
*Do and make* 81  
*Enough*  
   *not + adjective + enough* 73  
   [*not*] *enough + noun* 47  
*Ever* 20  
*Everyone, everybody, everything* 62  
 Excuses 51  
*Expect* 23  
*For* 20, 82, 83  
 Frequency adverbs 2  
 Functions 50, 51, 52, 53  
 Future  
   *going to* 22, 25  
   plans/intentions 22, 25  
   predictions 22, 23  
   present continuous 26  
   *will* 23, 25  
 Gerund [-*ing*] 5, 6, 26, 68, 86  
*Get* 80  
*Go* [*swimming*, etc.] 81  
*Going to* 22, 25, 26, 27  
 Greetings 51  
 Habits 2, 16  
*Had to* 39  
*Have got* 71, 80  
*Have to* 37, 38, 41  
*How much/many* 46  
*If I were you* 30, 50  
*If* sentences 29, 30, 31  
 Imperatives 29, 67  
 Impossibility 40  
 Inviting 52  
 Irregular verbs 10, 11, 17, 18  
*It and there* 79  
*Its and It's* 85  
*Just* 20, 75  
*Later* 27  
*Make and do* 81  
 Making arrangements 24, 26  
 Making comparisons 75, 76  
 Making offers 52  
*May* 40, 52  
*Might* 40  
 Modals  
   ability/possibility 36, 39, 40  
   obligation 37, 38, 39  
   past 39  
   possibility/certainty 36, 40  
   problems and contrasts 41  
*Much and many* 46, 47  
*Must* 37, 38, 40, 41  
 Nationality words 59, 73  
*Never* 20  
*No one, nobody, nothing, none* 62  
 Numbers 48  
 Object  
   gerund as object 68  
   pronouns 61  
   questions 33  
 Obligation 37, 38, 39  
 Offering 52  
*One, ones* 61  
 Passive voice 65, 66  
 Past continuous 13  
   and past simple 15

Elementary Language Practice

- Past perfect 64  
Past simple 8, 9, 10, 11  
    and past continuous 15  
    *was, were* 12  
*Perhaps* 23  
Permission 52  
Personal pronouns: *I, me*, etc. 61  
Phrasal verbs 81, 89  
Place and position 57, 58  
Plurals 43, 44, 45  
Possessive  
    adjectives [*my*, etc.] 71  
    apostrophe 72  
    *of* 72  
    pronouns [*mine*, etc.] 71  
Possibility 36, 40  
Predictions 22, 23, 25, 27  
Preferences 53  
Prefixes 89  
Prepositions/adverbials  
    after adjectives 89  
    after verbs 89  
    of place and position  
        *in, on, at, to, into* 57  
        *in front of* 58  
        *next to, near* 58  
        *opposite, behind* 58  
        *out, out of* 58  
        *outside, inside* 58  
    of time  
        *in, on* 54, 55  
        *at* 27, 55  
Present continuous 4, 5  
    and present simple 6  
    future use 26, 27  
Present perfect simple 17, 18  
    and past simple 19  
    and time expressions 20  
Present simple 2, 3  
    and present continuous 6  
*Probably* 23  
Promising 24, 25, 53  
Pronouns  
    object pronouns 61  
    possessive pronouns 71  
    *someone/body/thing*, etc. 62  
    subject pronouns 61  
Punctuation 85  
Questions  
    subject and object 33  
    tags 34  
    *wh-* questions 33  
Refusing 24, 25, 52  
Reminders 53  
Reported speech 64  
Requesting 53, 67  
*Shall* 23, 53  
Short answers 32, 33  
*Should* 37, 38  
*Since* 20  
*Some* 44, 45  
*Someone, somebody, something* 62  
*Soon* 27  
Spelling 86, 87, 88  
    and pronunciation 87  
    British/American 88  
    gerunds 4  
Subject  
    gerund as subject 68  
    *it and there* 79  
    pronouns 61  
    questions 33  
Suffixes 89  
Suggesting 53  
Superlative adjectives 59, 76  
Tag questions 34  
Telling the time 55  
*There and it* 79  
*This, that* 61  
Time expressions  
    *ago* 20  
    *for* 20  
    *since* 20  
    with past simple and present perfect simple 20  
    with future 27  
*Too + adjective* 73  
*Too much, too many* 47  
Uncertainty 36, 40  
*Used to* 16  
Verbs  
    followed by gerund [-*ing*] 82  
    followed by infinitive 82  
    followed by prepositions 82  
Warning 29, 53  
*Was, were* 12  
*Whose* 71  
*Will*  
    and *going to* 25  
    contrasts 27  
    in functional language 24  
    predictions 23  
Word formation 89  
*Would*  
    in conditionals 31, 36  
    in functional language 52, 53  
*Yet* 20



# Elementary Language Practice

- **Elementary level grammar** clearly explained and practised
- **Functional language** developed and extended
- **Language skills**, including spelling, punctuation and word formation
- Consolidation and **extension of vocabulary** in common topic areas
- Grammar index and wordlist
- Ideal for self-study or classroom use

	Elementary Language Practice	Intermediate Language Practice	First Certificate Language Practice	Advanced Language Practice
With Key	0435241222	0435241206	0435281666	0435241249
Without Key	0435241230	0435241214	0435281674	0435241257

  
**MACMILLAN  
HEINEMANN**  
English Language Teaching

